

Index

Main entries are arranged alphabetically and the sub-headings are arranged thematically rather than alphabetically. The Arabic definite article 'al-' is ignored for the purposes of alphabetization. The abbreviation 'b.' for *ibn* ('son of') is alphabetized as written.

Post-Alamūt Qāsim-Shāhī Nizārī imams are referred to as 'Nizārī imams', but the full designation is used for Muḥammad-Shāhī Nizārī imams.

- Aaron, *see* Hār ūn
- Abaqa, Īlkhanid, 379, 398, 411
- ‘Abbās, Saljūq governor of Rayy, 357
- ‘Abbās, son of Jangī Shāh, 480
- ‘Abbās I, Ṣafawid shāh, 417, 422, 437
- al-‘Abbās b. ‘Abd al-Muṭalib, uncle of the Prophet, 57, 79
- ‘Abbās b. Abī'l-Futūh, Fātimid vizier, 250, 251
- al-‘Abbās b. al-Karam (or al-Mukarram), Zuray‘id, 199, 255–256
- ‘Abbās b. Muḥammad b. Hātim b. al-Walid, Tayyibī *dā‘ī mutlaq*, 268
- ‘Abbās Shāh, Nizārī imam, *see* Gharīb Mīrzā
- ‘Abbāsids, 1, 2, 7, 9, 48, 54, 57, 58, 61, 71, 104, 114, 153, 161, 223, 318, 481
 - revolt of, 76–78, 219, 327
 - social order under, 78, 114
 - became Sunnis, 48, 79
 - repressed Shi‘ism, 78–79, 89, 95, 96, 112, 184
 - early Ismā‘īlīs protested against, 114–115
 - repressed Qarmaṭī revolts in 284–289/897–902, and 293–294/906–907, 108, 123–124
 - threatened by Qarmaṭīs of Bahrayn, 110, 148, 151
- versus Fātimids, 137, 138–139, 140, 142, 163–164, 167, 173, 176, 183, 185, 195, 201, 209, 212, 252
- common enemy of Fātimids and Qarmaṭīs, 152
- and the Büyids, 203
- and Abū Tāhir al-Jannābī, 148–149, 151
- sovereignty proclaimed in Damascus, 163; in Egypt, 252
- recognized by Mirdāsids, 194; by Zīrids, 183, 202
- and the Saljūqs, 195–196, 338, 373
- and the Nizāris, 342
- and the Mongols, 305, 388, 398
- in poetry of Ibn Hāni‘, 160–161
- term *dā‘ī* used by, 219
- recognized Nizārī state, 375–376
- ‘Abd al-Āḥad, *amīr* of Bukhārā, 29
- ‘Abd ‘Alī Sayf al-Dīn, Dā‘ūdī *dā‘ī*, 286
- ‘Abd Allāh, *dā‘ī* in Gujarāt, 200, 276–277
- ‘Abd Allāh, father of Ibn Sīnā, 202–203
- ‘Abd Allāh, father of Ni‘mat Allāh Walī Kirmānī, 428
- ‘Abd Allāh, half-brother of Nizār b. al-Mustanṣir, 242
- ‘Abd Allāh, son of the Fātimid caliph al-Mu‘izz, 172, 173, 191
- ‘Abd Allāh b. al-‘Abbās, ‘Abbāsid, 69
- ‘Abd Allāh b. ‘Abbās, *dā‘ī* in Yaman, *see* al-Shāwirī

- ‘Abd Allāh b. ‘Abd al-Qādir Najm al-Dīn, Dā’ūdī Bohra, 288
 ‘Abd Allāh b. ‘Alī b. Muḥammad b. al-Walid, Ṭayyibī *dā’ī muṭlaq*, 268
 ‘Abd Allāh b. ‘Alī al-‘Uyūnī, 210
 ‘Abd Allāh b. al-Ḥarb (or al-Ḥārith) al-Kindī, eponym of Ḥarbiyya, 62
 ‘Abd Allāh b. Ḥārith, 285
 ‘Abd Allāh b. al-Ḥasan al-Muthannā b. al-Ḥasan, ‘Alīd, 68, 72, 73, 74, 75, 77, 89
 ‘Abd Allāh b. Ḥātim b. al-Ghashīm, Hamdānid, 258
 ‘Abd Allāh b. al-Ḥusayn b. Aḥmad b. ‘Abd Allāh, *see* al-Mahdī, ‘Abd Allāh, first Fātimid caliph
 ‘Abd Allāh b. Ja’far al-Aftāḥ, ‘Alīd, 88, 91, 95, 101, 107, 118–119
 ‘Abd Allāh b. Ja’far al-Ṭayyār, Ṭālibid, 62
 ‘Abd Allāh b. Luṭf Allāh b. ‘Abd al-Rashīd al-Bihdādīnī, *see* Ḥāfiẓ Abrū
 ‘Abd Allāh b. Maymūn al-Qaddāh, 8, 25, 101–102, 103, 104, 105, 106
 ‘Abd Allāh b. Mu‘āwiya, Ṭālibid, leader of anti-Umayyad revolt, 62–63, 73, 75–76
 ‘Abd Allāh b. Muḥammad b. Ismā‘īl (al-Akbar), concealed Ismā‘īlī imam, 5, 96, 99–100, 104, 106, 107
 ‘Abd Allāh b. Muḥammad al-Makramī, Sayyidnā, Sulaymānī *dā’ī*, 297
 ‘Abd Allāh b. al-Nāwūs, 88
 ‘Abd Allāh b. Qaḥṭān, Ya‘furid *amīr*, 198
 ‘Abd Allāh b. Saba’, 63–64, 66
 ‘Abd Allāh b. ‘Umar, Umayyad governor of ‘Irāq, 75
 ‘Abd Allāh b. ‘Umar al-Hamdānī, Yamanī author, 230
 ‘Abd Allāh b. al-Zubayr, anti-caliph, 51, 52, 53
 ‘Abd Allāh Badr al-Dīn, Dā’ūdī *dā’ī*, 289
 ‘Abd Allāh al-Mahdī, *see* ‘Abd Allāh b. al-Ḥasan al-Muthannā
 ‘Abd Allāh al-Mahdī, *see* al-Mahdī, ‘Abd Allāh, first Fātimid caliph
 ‘Abd Allāh al-RAWandī, leader of Rāwandiyya, 62
 ‘Abd al-‘Azīz II, king of Saudi Arabia, 297
 ‘Abd al-‘Azīz b. Muḥammad b. al-Nu‘mān, Abu'l-Qāsim, Fātimid chief *qādī*, grandson of al-Qādī al-Nu‘mān, 172, 181, 215
 ‘Abd al-‘Azīz b. Muḥammad b. Sa‘ūd, 296
 ‘Abd al-Ḥamīd II, Ottoman sultan, 481
 ‘Abd al-Ḥaqq b. Sayf al-Dīn Dihlawī, hagiographer, 443
 ‘Abd al-Ḥusayn Ḥusām al-Dīn, Dā’ūdī *dā’ī*, 288
 ‘Abd al-Ḥusayn Jiwājī, founder of Mahdībāghwālās, 288
 ‘Abd al-Jabbār al-Hamadhānī, al-Qādī, Mu‘tazili scholar, 235
 ‘Abd al-Majīd I, Ottoman sultan, 489
 ‘Abd al-Majīd al-Ḥāfiẓ, *see* al-Ḥāfiẓ, Fātimid caliph
 ‘Abd al-Malik b. Aṭṭāsh, Ismā‘īlī *dā’ī* in Persia, 311–314 *passim*, 321, 325, 327, 329, 330, 339
 ‘Abd al-Malik b. Marwān, Umayyad caliph, 53, 54, 59
 ‘Abd al-Malik al-Kawkaṭī, early Ismā‘īlī *dā’ī*, 112
 ‘Abd al-Mu’min, founder of the Almohad dynasty, 202
 ‘Abd al-Muṭṭalib b. Hāshim, grandfather of the Prophet, 57
 ‘Abd al-Muṭṭalib b. Muḥammad b. Ḥātim b. al-Walid, Ṭayyibī *dā’ī muṭlaq*, 268
 ‘Abd al-Nabī b. ‘Alī b. al-Mahdī, Mahdid ruler of Zabīd, 259
 ‘Abd al-Qādir, son of Burhān I Nizām Shāh, 454
 ‘Abd al-Qādir Ḥakīm al-Dīn, 285
 Abd al-Qadir Ibrahimji, 289
 ‘Abd al-Qādir Najm al-Dīn, Dā’ūdī *dā’ī*, 286–288, 289
 ‘Abd al-Qāwī, adviser to Awrangzīb, 283
 ‘Abd al-Qays, Banū, of Arabia, 210
 ‘Abd al-Rahīm b. Ilyās b. Aḥmad, relative of the Fātimid caliph al-Ḥākim and *walī al-‘ahd*, 186, 191, 247
 ‘Abd al-Rahmān III, Umayyad caliph in Spain, 142, 147, 156, 159
 ‘Abd al-Salām Shāh, Nizārī imam, 423, 432, 433

- ‘Abd al-Tayyib Zakī al-Dīn b. Dā’ūd b. Quṭbshāh, Dā’ūdī *dā’ī*, 282, 283
- ‘Abd al-Tayyib Zakī al-Dīn b. Ismā’īl Badr al-Dīn, forty-first Dā’ūdī *dā’ī*, 286
- ‘Abd al-Tayyib Zaki al-Dīn b. Ismā’īl Badr al-Dīn b. Mullā Rāj, thirty-fifth Dā’ūdī *dā’ī*, 284
- ‘Abd al-Wahhāb Badr al-Dīn, Fātimid, 254
- ‘Abdān, Qarmatī leader, 108–109, 116–117, 119, 120–124 *passim*, 150, 167
- Abhar, in Persia, 377
- ‘Ābis b. Abī Ḥabīb, 50
- Abraham, *see* Ibrāhīm
- Abū ‘Abd Allāh al-Khādim, early Ismā’īlī *dā’ī* in Khurāsān, 112–113
- Abū ‘Abd Allāh al-Shī‘ī, early Ismā’īlī *dā’ī* in North Africa, 6, 125, 126–128 *passim*, 141–142, 214
- Abū ‘Aḥmad al-Nahrajūrī, 235
- Abū ‘Alī, brother-in-law of Ibn Madyan, 262
- Abū ‘Alī Ardistānī, Dihdār, Nizārī *dā’ī* in Persia, 319, 343, 344, 358
- Abū ‘Alī Ḥasan b. Aḥmad, *dā’ī* in Egypt, *see* Ḥamdān Qarmatī
- Abū ‘Alī al-Ḥasan b. ‘Alī al-Tūsī, *see* Niẓām al-Mulk, Saljūq vizier
- Abū ‘Alī al-Manṣūr al-Āmir bi-Aḥkām Allāh, *see* al-Āmir, Fātimid caliph
- Abū ‘Alī al-Manṣūr al-Ḥākim bi-Amr Allāh, *see* al-Ḥākim, Fātimid caliph
- Abū ‘Amra Kaysān, *see* Kaysān, Abū ‘Amra
- Abū Ash‘ath, Sāmānid secretary, 113
- Abū Bakr, first caliph, 36–37, 38, 39, 41, 44, 66, 74
- Abū Bakr b. Ḥammād, Qarmatī *dā’ī*, 120, 155
- Abū Dharr ‘Alī (Nūr al-Dīn), Nizārī imam, 425, 435–436
- Abū Dharr al-Ghiffārī, 39, 43, 371
- Abū Firās Shihāb al-Dīn b. al-Qādī Naṣr al-Maynaqī, Nizārī author in Syria, 371, 373, 408
- Abū Ghānim Naṣr, Qarmatī *dā’ī*, 123–124
- Abū Ḥamza, Nizārī *dā’ī* in Persia, 321
- Abū Ḥanīfa al-Nu‘mān, eponym of Ḥanafī *madhhab*, 80
- Abū Ḥanīfa al-Nu‘mān (al-Qādī al-Nu‘mān), *see* al-Nu‘mān b. Muḥammad, al-Qādī Abū Ḥanīfa
- Abū Ḥarb ‘Isā b. Zayd, 334
- Abū ḥāshim ‘Abd Allāh, ‘Alid, eponym of ḥāshimiyya, 60–61, 62, 64, 67, 76, 79
- Abū ḥāshim ‘Alawī, Zaydī pretender in Daylam, 346
- Abū ḥātim al-Rāzī, early Ismā’īlī (Qarmatī) *dā’ī* and author, 111–112, 121, 133, 152, 153, 154, 155, 217, 225–228, 230, 233
- Abū ḥātim al-Zuṭṭī, Qarmatī *dā’ī*, 124
- Abū ḥayyān al-Tawhīdī, 235, 236
- Abū ‘Isā ‘Abd al-‘Azīz b. Aḥmad, *dā’ī*, 158
- Abū ‘Isā al-Murshid, Ismā’īlī *dā’ī* and author, 133, 233
- Abū Ishāq Quhistānī, Nizārī author, 7, 406, 433–434
- Abū Ja‘far b. Naṣr, *dā’ī*, 158
- Abū Ja‘far al-Manṣūr, ‘Abbāsid caliph, *see* al-Manṣūr, Abū Ja‘far
- Abū Ja‘far Muḥammad b. Ya‘qūb al-Kulaynī (al-Kulīnī), *see* al-Kulaynī
- Abū Ja‘far-i Kabīr, Ismā’īlī *dā’ī*, 111
- Abū Kālijār Marzubān, Büyid, 203
- Abū Karib (Kurayb) al-Darīr, 59–60
- Abū Manṣūr, nephew of Abū Muḥammad, Nizārī *dā’ī* in Syria, 368
- Abū Manṣūr Aḥmad, Qarmatī ruler of Baḥrayn, 151, 161
- Abū Manṣūr b. Muḥammad, Nizārī chief *dā’ī* in Syria, 389
- Abū Manṣūr al-‘Ijlī, eponym of Manṣūriyya, 64, 69, 70–71, 72
- Abū Manṣūr Nizārī al-‘Azīz bi’llāh, *see* al-‘Azīz, Fātimid caliph
- Abū Muḥammad, Shaykh, Nizārī leader in Syria, 368
- Abū Muḥammad ‘Abd Allāh al-Mahdī bi’llāh, *see* al-Mahdī, ‘Abd Allāh, first Fātimid caliph
- Abū Muḥammad b. Ādām, head of Dār al-‘Ilm, 245

Abū Muḥammad Sanbar, Qarmaṭī dignitary in Baḥrāyīn, 151
 Abū Muḥammad Za‘farānī, Sunnī scholar, 324
 Abū Muslim, governor of Rayy, 314
 Abū Muslim b. Ḥammād, Qarmaṭī *dā’ī*, 120, 155
 Abū Muslim al-Khurāsānī, 76, 77, 78, 79, 141
 Abū Najāḥ b. Qannā’, Christian monk and Fāṭimid officer, 244
 Abū Rakwa Walīd b. Hishām, leader of anti-Fāṭimid revolt, 182
 Abū Riyāḥ, 62
 Abū Sa‘d al-Tustarī, Jewish merchant, 193
 Abū Sa‘id, brother of Nāṣir-i Khusraw, 205
 Abū Sa‘id, Īlkhanid, 307, 425
 Abū Sa‘id, Tīmūrid, 452
 Abū Sa‘id al-Jannābī, *see* al-Jannābī, Abū Sa‘id
 Abū Sa‘id al-Sha‘rānī, Ismā‘īlī *dā’ī*, 113
 Abū Sa‘īdīs, of Baḥrāyīn, 110–111
 Abū Salama al-Khallāl, 77, 78, 79
 Abū Shāma, historian, 23, 309
 Abū Sufyān, *dā’ī*, 126
 Abū Taghlib, Ḥamdānid, 162, 175
 Abū Tāhir, family, of Kāshān, 307
 Abū Tāhir Arrānī, 319
 Abū Tāhir Ismā‘īl al-Manṣūr bi’llāh, *see* al-Manṣūr, Fāṭimid caliph
 Abū Tāhir al-Ṣā’igh, Nizārī leader in Syria, 333–334, 347, 349
 Abū Tāhir Sulaymān al-Jannābī, *see* al-Jannābī, Abū Tāhir
 Abū Tālib, son of Shāh Tāhir Dakkanī, 455
 Abū Tālib, uncle of the Prophet, 57
 Abū Tamīm Ma‘add al-Mu‘izz li-Dīn Allāh, *see* al-Mu‘izz, Fāṭimid caliph
 Abū Tamīm Ma‘add al-Muṣṭanṣir bi’llāh, *see* al-Muṣṭanṣir, Fāṭimid caliph
 Abū Ya‘qūb al-Sijistānī, *see* al-Sijistānī, Abū Ya‘qūb
 Abū Ya‘qūb Yūsuf, Qarmaṭī ruler of Baḥrāyīn, 161
 Abū Yazīd Makhlaḍ b. Kaydād, leader of anti-Fāṭimid revolt, 145–147, 151, 156, 166

Abū Zakariyyā’al-Ṭamāmī (or al-Ζamāmī), Ismā‘īlī *dā’ī*, 110, 121
 Abu'l-‘Abbās al-Faḍl, Qarmaṭī ruler of Baḥrāyīn, 151
 Abu'l-‘Abbās Muhammad, Ismā‘īlī *dā’ī*, 125, 127, 141
 Abu'l-‘Abbās al-Saffāḥ, ‘Abbāsid caliph, *see* al-Saffāḥ
 Abu'l-Bahlūl al-'Awwām, 210
 Abu'l-Dawādī Muḥammad, ‘Uqaylid ruler of Mawṣil, 176
 Abu'l-Faḍl ‘Allāmī, secretary to Emperor Akbar, 281
 Abu'l-Fakhr, Ismā‘īlī jurist, 245
 Abu'l-Fath, brother of Nāṣir-i Khusraw, 205
 Abu'l-Fath, Nizārī leader in Afāmiya, 333–334
 Abu'l-Fath, Nizārī leader in Syria, 349
 Abu'l-Fawāris Ahmād b. Ya‘qūb, Ismā‘īlī *dā’ī* and author, 184
 Abu'l-Futūḥ Dā'ūd b. Naṣr, ruler of Multān, 167
 Abu'l-Futūḥ al-Ḥasan b. Ja‘far, *sharīf* of Mecca, 182
 Abu'l-Ğhārāt b. al-Mas‘ūd, Zuray‘īd, 256
 Abu'l-Ḥasan, son of Shāh Tāhir Dakkanī, 455
 Abu'l-Ḥasan, son of Shihāb al-Dīn Shāh al-Ḥusaynī, 480
 Abu'l-Ḥasan ‘Alī, *beglerbegi*, Nizārī imam, 459–462 *passim*
 Abu'l-Ḥasan ‘Alī b. ‘Abd al-Raḥmān al-Samanjānī, Sunnī scholar, 336
 Abu'l-Ḥasan ‘Alī al-Zāhir li-I‘zāz Dīn Allāh, *see* al-Zāhir, Fāṭimid caliph
 Abu'l-Ḥasan Khān, Sardār, brother of Āghā Khān I, *passim*, 464–465, 469–472
 Abu'l-Ḥasan Muḥammad, son of Ḥamdān Qarmatī, 120
 Abu'l-Ḥasan Sha‘īdī, Fāṭimid *qādī*, 363
 Abu'l-Hayjā’, Ḥamdānid, 183
 Abu'l-Haytham Ahmād b. al-Ḥasan al-Jurjānī, Ismā‘īlī author in Persia, 155
 Abu'l-Khaṭṭāb, eponym of Khaṭṭābiyya, 67, 85, 92, 102
 doctrines, 86

- influence on early Ismā‘īlism, 85, 90, 93
 in *Umm al-kitāb*, 93, 94
Abu'l-Ma‘lī, author, 206
Abu'l-Maymūm ‘Abd al-Majīd, *see*
 al-Ḥāfiẓ, Fātimid caliph
Abu'l-Musāfir, Sājid, 153
Abu'l-Qāsim Aḥmad al-Musta‘lī, *see*
 al-Musta‘lī, Fātimid caliph
Abu'l-Qāsim 'Ali b. Ja‘far, Sājid vizier, 154
Abu'l-Qāsim 'Imād al-Dīn, Fātimid, 254
Abu'l-Qāsim Muḥammad b. al-Muṣṭanṣir,
 father of the Fātimid caliph
 al-Ḥāfiẓ, 246
Abu'l-Qāsim Muḥammad Kūhpaya‘ī, *see*
 Amrī Shīrāzī
Abu'l-Qāsim Muḥammad al-Qā'im
 bi-Amr Allāh, *see* al-Qā'im, Fātimid
 caliph
Abu'l-Qāsim Sa‘īd, Qarmaṭī ruler of
 Bahrayn, 121, 148, 151, 161
Abu'l-Qāsim Shāhanshāh, *see* al-Afḍal b.
 Badr al-Jamālī
Abu'l-Shalaghlagh (or Shala‘la‘), *see*
 Muḥammad b. Aḥmad, Sa‘īd
 al-Khayr
Abu'l-Su‘ūd b. ‘Imrān, Zuray‘id, 257
Abu'l-Su‘ūd b. Zuray‘, Zuray‘id, 256
Abu'l-Thurayyā b. Mukhtār, Ismā‘īlī
 jurist, 245
Abu'l-Walīd Muslim, 210
al-Abwā‘, near Medina, 74
Abyan, in Yaman, 257
Abyssinia, Abyssinians (Ḥabash), 198,
 218, 257
Académie Royale des Inscriptions et
 Belles-Lettres, Paris, 22
acculturation, 404, 448–450, 494
Acre ('Akkā), 14, 15, 18, 194, 197, 216,
 244, 313, 390
Ādam (Adam)
 in Mukhammisa doctrine, 94
 in *Umm al-kitāb*, 94, 98
 in early Ismā‘īlī doctrine, 131, 134
 in writings of the Iranian school of
 philosophical Ismā‘īlism, 226–228
 in writings of Nāṣir-i Khusraw, 208
 in Ṭayyibī cosmology and eschatology,
 270–275
 in Nizārī doctrine, 365, 381
Ādam al-awwal al-kullī, 271–272
Ādam b. Sulaymān, wālī, 277
Ādam al-juz‘ī, 272, 273
Ādam al-rūḥānī, 270–271
'Adan, in southern Yaman, 199, 201, 238,
 255–258, 259, 260
'Adan Lā‘a, in Yaman, 109
adhān (Muslim call to prayer), 127, 196,
 198, 252
Ādharbayjān, region, in northwestern
 Persia, 149, 311, 312, 318, 346, 379,
 383, 386, 412, 413, 416, 419, 428, 430
 early (dissident) Ismā‘īlī *da‘wa* in, 112,
 121, 152, 153, 154, 167
 Nizārīs in, 342, 356, 377, 411, 418
Adhrūḥ, 45
'Adī b. Ḥātim, 45
al-'Ādīd, Fātimid caliph, 249–253 *passim*,
 255, 257
al-'Ādīl I, Ayyūbid ruler of Damascus and
 Egypt, 254, 389
al-'Ādīl b. Salār, Fātimid vizier, 250
'Ādīl-Shāhs, of Bijāpūr, 455
administration, *see* Fātimid caliphate:
 organization; Ṭayyibīs: *da‘wa*
 organization: Dā'ūdīs: *da‘wa*
 organization; Nizārīs: organization;
 see also *da‘wa*
'Adūd al-Dawla, Būyid, 175, 176
adwār, *see* *dawr*
Afāmiya (Apamea), in northern
 Syria, 179, 333, 335
al-Afḍal b. Badr al-Jamālī, Fātimid
 vizier, 211, 241–242, 243–244, 246,
 324, 342–343
Afghanistan, Afghans, 29, 30, 207, 392,
 411, 436, 461
Nizārīs of, 316, 356, 406, 410, 412, 453,
 456, 488, 494–495, 501; imams
 reasserted control, 432; in works of
 Khayrkhwāh, 433–434;
 Qāsim-Shāhīs, 438, 456;
 Muḥammad-Shāhīs, 451
 invaded Persia, 457, 460, 464
 British invasion of, 468–470
 Āghā Khān I in, 469–470, 473
Af‘ida, fortress, in Yaman, 268
Aflah b. Hārūn al-Malūsī, first Fātimid
 chief *qādī*, 168

- aflāk* (spheres), 229, 271
 Africa, 1, 21, 291
 Nizārī communities of, 481, 496, 504
 Aga Khan IV's projects in, 500, 502–503
 see further East Africa
 Afshārid dynasty, of Persia, 459
Aftāhiyya, *see* *Fatḥiyya*
 Aga Khan III, Sultān Muḥammad
 (Mohamed) Shāh, Nizārī imam, 31, 407, 455, 477, 480–496 *passim*, 497, 499, 503
 Aga Khan IV, Shāh Karīm al-Ḥusaynī,
 Nizārī imam, 33, 483, 496–504
 Aga Khan Award for Architecture, 503
 Aga Khan Case, of 1866, 28, 475–476, 486
 Aga Khan Development Network
 (AKDN), 502–503
 Aga Khan Foundation, 503
 Aga Khan Museum, Toronto, 504
 Aga Khan Programme for Islamic
 Architecture, 504
 Aga Khan Trust for Culture (AKTC), 503
 Aga Khan University, in Karachi, 503
 Aga Khan(s), 4, 28, 405, 407, 413, 414,
 442, 480–504 *passim*
 see also Āghā Khān(s)
 Āghā Buzurg al-Ṭihrānī, Twelver
 scholar, 168
 Āghā Khān I, Ḥasan ‘Alī Shāh, Nizārī
 imam, 462, 463–476 *passim*, 477,
 480, 481, 490–491
 Āghā Khān II, Āqā ‘Alī Shāh, Nizārī
 imam, 407, 476, 477–480
 Āghā Khān Mahallātī, *see* Āghā Khān I
 Āghā Khān(s), 405, 406, 463–480 *passim*,
 see also Aga Khan(s)
 Āghā Muhammad Khān Qājār, founder of
 the Qājār dynasty of Persia, 459, 460,
 461, 462
 Aghlabids, of Ifrīqiya, 125, 126, 127, 143
 Āgra, in northern India, 280, 283
 ‘ahd (oath), 129, 229, 312
 ‘ahd al-awliyā’, 293
 ahl al-ayyām, 42
 ahl al-bayt, 1, 35, 38, 40, 46, 56, 57–58, 72,
 76, 80, 82, 119, 127, 128, 135, 137,
 169, 170, 214, 215, 413, 501
 ‘spiritual adoption’ into, 92–93
 and *naṣṣ* imamate, 73, 81
 hadīths of, in Ismā‘īlī law, 170
 Sufi devotion to, 426
ahl al-da‘wa, 219, 222
ahl al-dhimma, *see* *dhimmīs*
Ahl al-‘Irāq, 46
ahl al-kitāb (people of the book), 34
Ahl al-Shām, 46
Ahl al-Sunna wa’l-Jamā‘a, 48
 see also *Jamā‘a*; Sunnīs
ahl-i ḥaqīqat, 433, 441
ahl-i ḥaqq, 433, 441
ahl-i tadādd, 365, 382, 441
ahl-i ta‘līm, 379
ahl-i tarattub, 366, 382, 442
ahl-i vaḥdat, 366, 382, 441, 442
 Ahmad, founder of the Ḥujūmiyya
 subgroup of Dā’ūdī Bohras, 283–284
 Ahmad, son of Khalaf, Ismā‘īlī dā‘ī, 111
 Ahmad I, sultan of Gujarāt, 277, 278
 Ahmad I Wali, Bahmanid, 428–429
 Ahmad II b. Ismā‘īl, Sāmānid, 113
 Ahmad b. ‘Abd Allāh b. Maymūn
 al-Qaddāḥ, 102
 Ahmad b. ‘Abd Allāh b. Muḥammad b.
 Ismā‘īl, concealed Ismā‘īlī
 imam, 100, 102, 106, 235
 Ahmad b. ‘Alī, governor of Rayy, 112, 152
 Ahmad b. Ikhshīdīd, 158
 Ahmad b. ‘Atṭāsh, *see* Ahmad Ibn ‘Atṭāsh
 Ahmad b. al-Ḥasan, Kalbid governor of
 Sicily, 145
 Ahmad b. Imrān b. al-Fadl, al-Qādī,
 Hamdānī leader, 258
 Ahmad b. Īsā b. Zayd, Zaydī imam, 73
 Ahmad b. al-Kayyāl, 112–113
 Ahmad b. Khidr, Qarakhānid ruler, 203
 Ahmad b. Marzubān b. Ishāq, *dā‘ī* in
 India, 200
 Ahmad b. al-Mubārak Ibn al-Walid,
 Tayyibī *dā‘ī muṭlaq*, 267
 Ahmad Ibn ‘Atṭāsh, son of ‘Abd al-Malik
 b. ‘Atṭāsh, Nizārī *dā‘ī* of
 Iṣfahān, 330, 336–337
 Ahmad Ja‘far Shīrāzī, 279
 Ahmad Mukhtār Pasha, Ottoman general
 in Yaman, 296–297
 Ahmad Shāh, Nizārī imam, *see* Islām Shāh

Index

703

- Aḥmadābād, in Gujarāt, 277, 278, 280, 281, 282, 283, 284, 291, 298, 445–448 *passim*
 Aḥmadnagar, in the Deccan, 452–455 *passim*
 al-Aḥṣā’, capital of the Qarmaṭī state of Bahrayn, 110, 149, 162, 185, 210
 Ahwāz, in Khūzistān, 100, 102, 149, 203
 Aiglemont, near Paris, headquarters of Aga Khan IV, 504
al-a’imma al-mastūrīn, *see* hidden imams
 ‘Ā’isha bint Abū Bakr, wife of the Prophet, 44
 Ajamiyyūn, 124, 149, 150
 Akbar, Mughal emperor, 277, 280, 281, 422, 436
 Akbar Shāh, Āqā, son of Āghā Khān I, 476, 482
akhaṣṣ-i khāṣṣ, 366
 Akhbārī school, of Twelver law, 171
Akhlaq-i muhtashamī, of Naṣīr al-Dīn al-Tūsī, 378–379
Akhlaq-i Nāṣirī, of Naṣīr al-Dīn al-Tūsī, 378–379, 380
 al-Akhram, al-Hasan b. Ḥaydara, Druze leader, 186–187, 188
 Akhū Muḥsin, *see* Muḥammad b. ‘Alī b. al-Ḥusayn
akwār, *see* *kawr*
 Āl Khayrāt, of southern Arabia, 296
āl Muḥammad, *see* *ahl al-bayt*
 Āl Sa‘ūd, 296, 297, 298
 ‘Alā’ al-Dawla Simnānī, Sufi and Sunnī theologian, 427
 ‘Alā’ al-Dīn Aḥmad II, Bahmanid, 429
 ‘Alā’ al-Dīn Ḥusayn Jahānsūz, Ghūrid, 356
 ‘Alā’ al-Dīn Kayqubād I, Saljūq ruler of Rūm, 390
 ‘Alā’ al-Dīn Maḥmūd, governor of Turaythīth, 357
 ‘Alā’al-DīnMuḥammad, Khwārazmshāh, 374, 375, 376, 377, 383
 ‘Alā’al-Dīn Muḥammad III, Nizārī imam and lord of Alamūt, 18, 302, 375, 377–392 *passim*, 417
 ‘Alā’ al-Dīn Mu’min Shāh, *see* Mu’min Shāh
 ‘Alā’ al-Dīn Tekish, Khwārazmshāh, 373, 374
 Alamūt, fortress and seat of Nizārī state, in northern Persia, 3–4, 18, 19, 112, 314–316, 317–318, 324, 336, 367, 379, 386–387
 etymology, 318
 archaeology of, 304
 described by Marco Polo, 17
 Ismā‘īlī library at, 302, 303, 305, 306, 342, 355, 376, 396
 seat of Justānids, 152–153
 as seat of Nizārī state, 3, 21, 245, 301, 352, 374; taken by Hasan-i Ṣabbāh, 314–316; Saljūq attempts to take, 337–338; attacked by Shāh Ghāzī, 344–345; Abū Hāshim (Zaydī) at, 346; *qiyāma* proclaimed at, 358–359, 362; destruction by Mongols, 303, 304, 393–394, 396, 402, 410; Nizārī attempts to reoccupy, 410–411, 416–417, 451
 as Ṣafawid prison, 417
see also Nizārīs: Alamūt period
 ‘Alawīs, ‘Alawiyya, subgroup of Dā’ūdī Bohras, 239, 241, 282
 ‘Alawīs, *see* Nusayrīs
 ‘Albā’iyya, *see* ‘Ulā’iyya
 Alburz mountains, in Persia, 318, 320–321, 339, 353
 Aleppo (Ḥalab), in northern Syria, 27, 313, 367, 372, 389, 428
 under Ḥamdānids, 161, 176, 178
 under Fātimids, 175, 183, 192, 216, 250
 under Saljūqs, 352
 during Nizārī-Musta‘lī schism, 325
 Nizārī centre, 309, 332–334, 347
 attacked by Nizārīs, 370
 besieged by Saladin, 369
 Alexander, era of, 150
 Alexandria (Iskandariyya), in Egypt, 182, 194, 242, 250, 313
 Alftakīn, Turkish commander, 163, 173, 175
 Algeria, 126, 127
 ‘Alī, Tāhirid ruler of Yaman, 268
 ‘Alī al-A‘azz, Zuray‘id, *see* ‘Alī b. Saba’
 ‘Alī al-A‘lā, Ḥurūfī propagandist, 421

‘Alī (‘Abd Allāh) b. ‘Abd Allāh, Sulayhid, 263–264
 ‘Alī al-Asadī, 185
 ‘Alī b. ‘Abd Allāh b. al-‘Abbās, ‘Abbāsid, 61
 ‘Alī b. ‘Abd Allāh b. ‘Alī b. al-Walīd, Tayyibī *dā’i muṭlaq*, 268, 278
 ‘Alī b. Abī Ṭālib, first Shī‘ī imam and fourth caliph, 1, 37–38, 39, 41, 42, 43, 44–49 *passim*, 52, 57, 62, 63–64, 71, 81, 89, 94, 137, 165, 207, 273
 investiture by the Prophet, 39, 83, 177–178, 247
 significance for Shī‘īs, 37–38
 his divinity for ‘Ulā’iyya and Nuṣayrīs, 94–95
 in Zaydī doctrine, 74
 in account of Akhū Muḥsin, 102
 and ‘Abd Allāh b. Saba’, 63–64, 66
 in early Ismā‘īlī enumerations of imams, 97, 165
 in early Qarmaṭī series of *ūlu'l-‘azm* prophets, 97–98
 as Muhammad’s *ḥujja*, 118
 as Muhammad’s *waṣī*, 129, 132, 232
hadiths of, in Ismā‘īlī law, 170
 commemorated by Dā’ūdīs, 294
 as Nizārī *imām-qā’im*, 365
 primacy in Sufi doctrine 426–428 *passim*, 431
 in religious poems of Nizārīs of Badakhshan, 494
 ‘Alī b. Abu’l-Ghārāt, Zuray‘id, 256
 ‘Alī b. Aḥmad, Sulayhid, 263
 ‘Alī b. al-Asad, Abu’l-Ma‘alī, *amīr* of Badakhshan, 206–207
 ‘Alī b. al-Faḍl, early Ismā‘īlī *dā’i* in Yaman, 109–110, 122, 125
 ‘Alī b. al-Ḥākim, Fāṭimid, 186
 ‘Alī b. Ḥamdūn al-Andalusī, 157
 ‘Alī b. Ḥanẓala b. Abī Sālim al-Mahfūzī al-Wādi‘ī, Tayyibī *dā’i muṭlaq*, 267
 ‘Alī b. Ḥarb, Naṣrid *amīr* of Sīstān, 384
 ‘Alī b. Hārūn al-Zanjānī, 235
 ‘Alī b. Ḥasan b. ‘Alī b. Muhammad b. al-Hanafiyah, ‘Alid, 61
 ‘Alīb. Ḥātim, *see* al-Ḥāmidī, ‘Alīb. Ḥātim

‘Alī b. Ḥātim b. Aḥmad b. ‘Imrān, Hamdānid, 259–260, 265
 ‘Alī b. Hibat Allāh, Sulaymānī *dā’i*, 297
 ‘Alī b. al-Ḥusayn, Zayn al-‘Ābidīn, imam, 50, 58–59, 60, 67, 90
 transmitted *naṣṣ*, 81
 in early Ismā‘īlī enumeration of imams, 90, 97
 ‘Alī b. al-Ḥusayn b. Aḥmad, *see* al-Mahdī, ‘Abd Allāh, first Fāṭimid caliph
 ‘Alī b. al-Ḥusayn b. ‘Alī b. Ḥanẓala, Tayyibī *dā’i muṭlaq*, 268
 ‘Alī b. al-Ḥusayn b. ‘Alī Ibn al-Walīd, Tayyibī *dā’i muṭlaq*, 267–268
 ‘Alī b. al-Ḥusayn b. Idrīs Ibn al-Walīd, Tayyibī *dā’i muṭlaq*, 269, 279
 ‘Alī b. al-Ḥusayn b. al-Walīd, Tayyibī *ma’dhūn*, 265, 267
 ‘Alī b. al-Ḥusayn al-Maghribī, Fāṭimid vizier, 181
 ‘Alī b. al-Ḥusayn al-Qurashī, Ismā‘īlī author, 218
 ‘Alī b. Ibrāhīm, founder of the ‘Alawī subgroup of Dā’ūdī Bohras, 282
 ‘Alī b. Ibrāhīm b. al-Ḥusayn b. al-Walīd, Tayyibī *dā’i muṭlaq*, 268
 ‘Alī b. ‘Isā, ‘Abbāsid vizier, 148
 ‘Alī b. Ishāq b. Ya‘qūb, *dā’i* in Gujarat, 277
 ‘Alī b. Ismā‘īl b. Ja‘far al-Ṣādiq, ‘Alid, 95
 ‘Alī b. Ismā‘īl al-Maythamī, Imāmī scholar, 84
 ‘Alī b. Ja‘far b. Falāḥ, 179
 ‘Alī b. Mas‘ūd, Khwāja, Nizārī *dā’i*, 368
 ‘Alī b. Mufarrij b. Daghfal, Jarrāḥid, 182
 ‘Alī b. Muhammad b. al-Hanafiyah, ‘Alid, 61
 ‘Alī b. Muhammad Ibn al-Walīd, Tayyibī *dā’i muṭlaq*, 210, 260, 266–267
 ‘Alī b. Muhammad al-Ṣulayḥī, Ismā‘īlī *dā’i* and founder of the Sulayhid dynasty of Yaman, 198–199, 258, 263, 267
 ‘Alī b. Muhammad al-Zanjī, leader of the Zanj revolt, 108
 ‘Alī b. Muḥsin, Sulaymānī *dā’i*, 297

Index

705

- ‘Alī b. al-Nu‘mān b. Muḥammad, Abu’l-Ḥusayn, Fāṭimid chief *qāḍī*, 171, 177, 214
- ‘Alī b. Saba’ b. Abu’l-Su‘ūd, Zuray‘id, 257
- ‘Alī b. Sa‘id al-Īṣṭakhrī, Mu‘tazilī theologian, 185
- ‘Alī b. Sulaymān, Sulaymānī *dā‘ī*, 296
- ‘Alī b. ‘Umar al-Balawī, 143
- ‘Alī b. Wafā’, Nizārī commander, 352
- ‘Alī b. Wahsūdān, Justānid, 153
- ‘Alī al-Naqī (al-Hādī), Twelver imam, 89
- ‘Alī al-Ridā, Twelver imam, 89
- ‘Alī Shāh, thirty-second Nizārī imam, *see* Mustanṣir bīllāh II
- ‘Alī Shāh, forty-seventh Nizārī imam, *see* Āghā Khān II
- ‘Alī Shāh, Mihrabānid, *see* Shams al-Dīn ‘Alī
- ‘Alī Shams al-Dīn, Dā‘ūdī *dā‘ī*, 283
- ‘Alid loyalism, 425, 426, 427, 428, 429, 431
- ‘Alids, 1, 7, 36, 49, 52, 57–58, 59, 60, 78, 89, 107, 158, 170, 185, 214, 430, 435 exalted by Shī‘īs, 66, 413 suppressed by ‘Abbāsid al-Manṣūr, 79 effect of *naṣṣ*, 82–83 sanctuary in Tabaristān, 112, 314, 317 *see also* Ḥanafids; Ḥasanids; Ḥusaynids; Fāṭimids
- Aligarh, University of, 482
- Alīsa‘ b. Midrār, Midrārid ruler of Tāfilālt, 125
- ‘Allāqa, leader of anti-Fāṭimid revolt, 179
- allegorical interpretation, *see* *ta’wil*
- All-India Muslim Conference, of 1928, 483
- All-India Muslim Educational Conferences, of 1903, 1904, 482
- All-India Muslim League, 482
- Almohads (*Muwaḥhidūn*), of North Africa and Spain, 180, 182
- Aloodin (‘Alā’al-Dīn Muḥammad III q.v.), 16
- Alp Arslān, Saljūq ruler of Aleppo, 334
- Alp Arslān, Saljūq sultan, 197, 198
- alphabet, *see* *hurūf*
- Alptakīn, *see* Alftakīn
- Aly Khan, Prince, son of Aga Khan III and father of Aga Khan IV, 482, 483, 496
- Aly Muhammad, Prince, son of Aga Khan IV, 504
- ‘amal, 226, 271, 360
- Amalric I, king of the Latin state of Jerusalem, 251, 252, 253, 369, 372
- Ambrosiana Library, Milan, 28
- America(s), immigration to: Druze, 189; Dā‘ūdī, 291; Nizārī, 497, 500
see also United States of America
- American University of Beirut, 32
- Āmid, in Diyār Bakr, 345, 347
- al-‘Amīd b. Mānsūr (Mas‘ūd), governor of Turaythīth, 357
- ‘āmil, Dā‘ūdī functionary, 292–293, 298
- Amīnjī b. Jalāl, Ṭayyibī jurist, 280
- al-Āmir, Fāṭimid caliph, 3, 10, 105, 238, 239, 244–248 *passim*, 256, 258, 261–262, 263, 277, 325, 326, 343, 346
see also *al-Hidāya al-Āmiriyah*
- ‘Āmir, Ṭāhirid ruler of Yaman, 268
- ‘Āmir b. Rabī‘a, Banū, of eastern Arabia, 210
- amīr al-juyūsh* (commander of the armies), 195, 211, 212
- Amīr Kabīr, Mīrzā Taqī Khān, Qājār chief minister, 473
- Amīr Khalil Allāh Anjudānī, *see* Khalil Allāh I, Nizārī imam
- Amīr Khān Müşilū, Ṣafawid governor of Hamadān, 436
- Amīr Kiyā‘ī Sayyids, of Daylamān, 415–416, 417
- Amīr Muḥammad b. Haydar al-Bāqir, last Muḥammad-Shāhī Nizārī imam, 455, 456, 489
- Amīr Muḥammad b. Mu‘īn al-Dīn II al-Musharraf, Muḥammad-Shāhī Nizārī imam, 455
- Amīr Sulaymān, grandson of Amīr Ismā‘īl, Nizārī leader in Syria, 534
- Amīra Darrāb, Ismā‘īlī *dā‘ī* in Rayy, 311–312
- Amīrdād Ḥabashī, Saljūq *amīr*, 321
- Āmiriyah, 238, 248, 261
see also Ṭayyibīs

- ‘āmma (‘awāmm), 129, 365
 ‘Ammār b. Yāsir, 39, 43
 ‘Ammār b. Yazīd, *see* Khidāsh
 ‘āmmat al-Muslīmīn, 219
 ‘Amr, mosque, Cairo, 214
 amr (divine command), 40, 134, 229, 230, 364
al-amr bi'l-ma'rūf wa'l-nahy 'an al-munkar, 343
 Amrī Shīrāzī, poet, 422
 ‘Amrūn, Banū, of Syria, 349–350
 Āmū Daryā, *see* Oxus river
 Anatolia, *see* Rūm
 al-Anbār, in ‘Irāq, 149
 al-Andalus, 158, 370
 Anf, Banu'l-, of Yaman, 267, 280
 Anglo-Persian Treaty, of 1814, 472
 Anhalwāra, *see* Pātan
 Anjidān, *see* Anjudān
 Anjirūd, village near Alamūt, 314, 324
 Anjudān, village near Mahallāt, in central Persia, 4, 404–405, 456, 459, 495
 centre of Nizārī revival, 406, 413, 418, 422–425, 432–442, 447, 448, 449, 473
anṣār (Helpers), 36, 38, 42, 127
 al-Anṭākī, Yahyā b. Sa‘īd, historian, 180
 anthropomorphism, *see* *tashbih*
 Antioch (Anṭākiya), 175, 331, 333, 350, 389, 399
 Anūshtrigin al-Duzbarī, Fātimid general, 192, 195
 Apulia, 145
 Aq Qoyunlu, dynasty of Persia and eastern Anatolia, 425, 430, 431
 Āqā ‘Alī Shāh, Āghā Khān II, *see* Āghā Khān II
 Āqā Khān, *see* Āghā Khān, Aga Khan
 Āqā Khān Nūrī, Qājār chief minister, 473
 ‘āqil, ‘uqqāl (sages), 190
 ‘Aqīl b. Abī Ṭālib, Ṭālibid, 102
 ‘aql (intellect), 171, 229–230, 231, 341
 al-‘aql al-awwal, 233, 270
 al-‘aql al-fa‘āl, 234
 al-‘aql al-kullī, 189, 190
 al-‘aql al-thānī, 234
 al-Aqmār, mosque, Cairo, 244, 290
 ‘Aqr al-Sudan, village near Başra, southern ‘Irāq, 367
aqwiyā, 382, 441
 Arabia, 36, 41, 43, 47, 61, 110, 198, 199, 210, 287, 296, 297, 468, 469
see also Hijāz
 Arabic (language), 1, 21, 70, 233, 240, 292–299 *passim*, 302, 309, 406, 408, 449, 477, 480
 Arabs, 43, 51, 150, 184, 196, 197, 201, 225, 461
 soldiers, 42, 126
 tribal society, 42, 114
 versus *mawālī*, 51–53, 54
 belief in hereditary attributes, 40–41, 47
 as *ghulāt*, 66, 70
 pro-Shī‘i in Kūfa, 47–48
 hegemony under Umayyads, 55–56, 78
 under al-Mukhtār, 53
 northern (Nizārī Arabs), 45
 southern, *see* Yamanīs
 in Sicily, 143
 as faction in Fātimid army, 193
jazīra of, 217
 Arāk, in central Persia, 423, 456
 Aramaeans, 54, 55, 108
arbāb al-aqlām, 212, 213
arbāb al-suyūf, 213
 archaeological evidence, 304, 309
 Ardabīl, in Ādharbayjān, 153, 430
 ‘Arīb b. Sa‘īd al-Qurṭubī, historian, 6, 103
 ‘ārif (gnostic), 412, 420
 Aristotle (Arisṭūṭalīs or Arisṭū), 223, 224, 233, 237
arkān (elements), 234, 271
 Armenia, Armenians, 149, 194, 246, 249, 250, 399, 412
 Arnold of Lübeck, German abbot and historian, 13, 20, 24
 Arnould, Sir Joseph, 476
 Arrajān, castles and town, in Khūzistān, 321, 336, 337, 353
 Arrān, 377, 412
 Arsenius, metropolitan of Cairo, 177
 ‘arsh (throne), 135, 230
 Arslān Tāsh, Saljūq *amīr*, 319
 Arsūf, in Palestine, 243
 Artāliswālās, subgroup of Mahdibāghwālās, 288–289
 Artuqids, of Diyār Bakr, 243, 347

Index

707

- ‘Arūs, fortress, in Yaman, 267
 Arwā, Ṣulayḥid queen of Yaman, 200, 243,
 246, 255–265 *passim*, 275, 277
 Asad, Banū, 85, 185
 As‘ad, cousin of al-Mufaḍḍal b.
 Abīl-Barakāt, 256
 Asad b. Abī Ya‘fur, Ya‘furid, 122
 As‘ad b. Shihāb, governor of Ḫanṭā, 199,
 258
 Asad al-Dīn, Rasūlid, 267
 al-A‘ṣam, *see* al-Hasan al-A‘ṣam
 Asani, Ali, 444
 asās, 97, 105, 132, 217, 231, 234
 Aşbagħ, Banu'l-, of Syria, 122
 al-Asfar, chief of Banu'l-Muntaqi, 185
 Asfār b. Shirawayh, Daylamī leader, 112,
 152, 153
 al-Ash‘arī, Abu'l-Hasan ‘Alī b. Ismā‘il,
 Sunnī theologian and
 heresiographer, 59
 al-Ash‘ath, father of Ḥamdān
 Qarmat, 107
 Ashīr, in the central Maghrib, 156–157,
 162
 Ashkawar, in Daylamān, 314, 415–416
ashrāf al-qabā'il, 42, 45, 48, 52–53
 ‘Āshūrā’, of al-Husayn b. ‘Alī, 177, 294,
 492
 Asia, 1, 138, 201, 290, 388
 traders to East Africa, 291, 485–486
 Nizārī communities of, 496, 497, 504
 Aga Khan IV’s projects in, 500, 502–503
 Asia Minor, *see* Rūm
 Asiatic Museum, St Petersburg, 27, 29, 30
 Aṣīl, nephew of Shīrgīr, 345
 Aṣīl al-Dīn Zūzanī, Khwāja, 395
 ‘Askar Mukram, in Khūzistān, 100, 102
 al-*aṣlān* (the two principles), 229,
 230–231
asnāf, *see* guilds
 ‘Asqalān (Ascalon), 173, 179, 192, 197,
 216, 243, 244, 250
 Assassin legends, 12–19 *passim*, 22,
 328–329, 368
 assassination, 12, 70, 146, 328–329, 332,
 352
 Assassins, 11–22, 26
 variants of the term, 11–18 *passim*, 21
 origins of the name, 13, 19–20, 21–24
 passim
 see also assassination; Nizārīs: distorted
 image
 Assemani, Joseph Simonius, 21, 22
 Assemani, Simone, 22
 Aswan, in Egypt, 496
 ‘aṭā’ (stipend), 43
 ‘Atā’ Allāh, *tariqa* name of Shāh Nizār II
 (q.v.), 457
 ‘Atā’ Allāhī tribesmen, of Kirmān, 457,
 461, 462, 464, 468–469
 Atbā‘-i Malak Badr, *see* Mahdībāghwālās
 Atbā‘-i Malak Vakīl, *see* Artāliswālās
 ‘Āththiyā, subgroup of Imām-Shāhīs, 447
 ‘Atīyyat Allāh b. Mu‘īn al-Dīn
 (Khudāybakhsh), Muḥammad-Shāhī
 Nizārī imam, 455
 Atlanta, 497
 Atlantic, 156, 176
 Atsiz b. Uvak, Turkoman chieftain, 197,
 313
 ‘Attār, Farīd al-Dīn, Sufi poet, 420
 ‘Attāra, fortress, in Ḥarāz, 297, 298
 Australia, 189
avatāra, descent of Vishnu, 450
 Avicenna, *see* Ibn Sīnā
 ‘awāmm, *see* ‘āmma
 al-Awfi, 235
 Awrangābād, in India, 490
 Awrangzīb, Mughal emperor, 283–285,
 447, 448, 456
 Awrās, in North Africa, 146, 156
al-awwal (the first), 229, 270
 ‘Aydhbāb, port on Red Sea, 201
 ‘Ayn Jālūt, in Palestine, 399
 ‘Ayn al-Warda, battle of, 51
 Ayyūb, father of Saladin, 251
 Ayyūbids, 5, 249, 251, 310, 369
 origins, 252–253
 hostility to al-Azhar mosque, 159
 in Yaman, 200, 255, 257, 260, 266, 267
 and Ḥāfiẓīs of Egypt, 253
 and Nizārīs in Syria, 254, 376, 389–390
 in south Arabia, 257, 260
 and the Mongols, 398–399
 A‘zam Khān, Afghan *amīr*, 460
 ‘Azāz, in northern Syria, 370

- al-Azhar, mosque and university, Cairo, 159, 177, 214, 215, 220, 252
- Azhar Park, Cairo, 504
- al-Azharī, Abū Mansūr, Arab lexicographer, 148
- al-'Azīmī, Muḥammad b. 'Alī, historian, 309
- al-'Azīz, Ayyūbid ruler of Aleppo, 390
- al-'Azīz, Fātimid caliph, 171, 172–178 *passim*, 180, 185, 191, 212
- 'Azīz Allāh Qummī, Nizārī poet, 438
- 'Azīz Shāh b. 'Aṭiyyat Allāh, Muḥammad-Shāhī Nizārī imam, 455
- al-'Azīzī, dā'i, 262
- Azraqīs, subgroup of Khārijīs, 146
- Bāb, in Syria, 370
- bāb, rank in *da'wa* hierarchy, 94, 208, 216–217, 218, 219, 220, 234, 262, 275
- bāb al-abwāb*, 216–217
see also *dā'i al-du'āt*
- Bāb al-Futūḥ, Fātimid gate, Cairo, 159
- Bāb Zuwayla, Fātimid gate, Cairo, 159
- Babylonian, 237
- badā'* (change in God's will or command), 64
- Badakhshan, 4, 29, 33, 206–207, 243, 451–452
Nizārīs of, 207, 304, 407–408, 432, 433, 440, 494–495, 502; preserved Nizārī literature, 29, 31, 33, 420, 433, 494–495; deputations to Āghā Khān I, 465, 470; Qāsim-Shāhīs, 438; Muḥammad-Shāhīs, 414, 451–452, 456
- Badakhshānī, Sayyid Suhrāb Valī, Nizārī author, 408
- Badakhshānī, Sayyid Sulaymān, Nizārī *mu'allim* in Persia, 493
- Ba'di az ta'wilāt-i gulshan-i rāz*, anonymous Nizārī work, 419
- Bādis b. Mansūr, Zīrid, 179–180
- Badr, in Najrān, 296, 298
- Badr al-Dīn Ahmad, Nizārī envoy, 386–387
- Badr al-Dīn Muḥammad b. Ḥātim, Yamanī historian, 260
- Badr al-Jamālī (Badr al-Mustanṣirī), Fātimid vizier, 194–195, 197, 204, 211, 212, 241–242, 248, 311, 313
- Badri Mahal, Bombay, 292, 293
- Bādūspānids, of Daylam, 344, 345, 367, 387
- Baffioni, Carmela, 32
- Baghdad, 8, 10, 78, 79, 89, 109, 148, 161, 167, 313, 320, 321, 336, 338, 347, 379, 473
- anti-Fātimid manifesto, of 402/1011, 101, 102, 103, 185, of 444/1052, 209
- in campaign of Abū Ṭāhir al-Jannābī, 149
- taken by Büyids, 150
- dā'i al-Kirmānī* in, 184
- Saljūq Ṭughril I in, 196–197
- in campaign of pro-Fātimid al-Basāsīrī, 195–196
- massacres of Ismā'iilīs, 330
- taken by Mongols, 305, 398
- Tīmūr in, 418
- al-Baghdādī, Abū Mansūr 'Abd al-Qāhir b. Ṭāhir, Sunnī jurist and heresiographer, 9, 59
- Bahā' al-Dawla, Bahman Mīrzā, Qājār governor of Yazd, 468
- Bahā' al-Dawla Ḥrānshāh b. Tūrānshāh, Saljūq ruler of Kirmān, 321
- Bahmanids, of the Deccan, 427–428, 429, 453
- Bahr al-'Ulūm, *see* Sayyid al-Ṭā'ifa
- Bahrain, *see* Bahrain
- Bahrām, Fātimid vizier, 212, 249
- Bahrām, Nizārī leader in Syria, 347–348, 352
- Bahrāyīn, eastern Arabia, 2, 199, 206, 327, 427, 435
- Ismā'iilī *da'wa* in, 102, 110, 121
- Baqliyya in, 124, 149
- Qarmaṭīs of, *see under* Qarmaṭīs
- Bakhtiyārī tribesmen, of Persia, 459
- Bakjūr, governor of Ḥimṣ, 175
- Baku, in Caucasus, 412
- balāgh* (initiation), 9, 10, 129
- Balaghī, Mongol officer, 394, 396
- Balāk, nephew of Ḥātimī, 347
- al-Balāsānī, Saljūq vizier, 321

- Baldwin I, king of the Latin state of Jerusalem, 244
- Bālis, fortress, in Syria, 334, 335
- Balkh, 205, 206, 320, 335, 383, 392
- Baltakin, Turkish general, 175
- Bāltīt, *see* Karīmābād
- Balūchistān, Balūchīs, 218, 460, 463, 465, 469, 470–472 *passim*
- Bam, in Kirmān, 460, 462, 464–465, 469
- Bampūr (Banfahl), fortress, in Balūchistān, 471–472
- Bandar ‘Abbās, port on Persian Gulf, 468, 469
- Bangalore, in India, 473
- Bangladesh, 501
- Bāniyās, fortress, in Syria, 348, 349
- Banū, followed by the name of the eponymous ancestor of a tribe, *see under the name of that ancestor*
- al-Baqī‘ cemetery, in Medina, 86, 91
- Baqī‘a mountains, in Syria, 255, 261
- al-Bāqir, imam, *see* Muḥammad al-Bāqir
- Bāqir ‘Alī, last pīr of the Āṭhthiyās, 447
- Bāqir Shāh, Nizārī imam, *see* Abu'l-Hasan ‘Alī, *beglerbegi*
- Bāqiriyya, subgroup of Imāmiyya, 71
- Baqliyya, subgroup of Qarmatīs, 124, 149
- Bar Dīshān, *see* Ibn Dayṣān
- Bārakzāy dynasty, of Afghanistan, 470
- Baraq b. Jandal, 348
- Barbarossa Frederick I, Holy Roman emperor, 12
- Barbelo-Gnostic system, 135
- Barbhāi, Nizārī Khoja dissidents, 474–476
- Bardesanes, *see* Ibn Dayṣān
- Bardesanians, *see* Daysāniyya
- Barghash, Fātimid vizier, 246
- Barjawān, Abu'l-Futūh, Fātimid *wāsiṭa*, 179–180, 181
- Barkiyāruq, Saljuq sultan, 320, 321, 329, 330, 331, 334, 335, 347
- Baroda (Vadodara), in Gujarāt, 241, 282, 298
- Barqa (Cyrenaica), 142, 143, 179, 182, 201, 202
- Barzishābādī Mashhadī, ‘Abd Allāh, Sufi master, 427
- al-Basāsīrī, Arslān, Turkish general, 195–197, 204
- Bashshār al-Shā‘īrī, 94
- Basil II, Byzantine emperor, 176, 179, 181
- Baṣra, in Morocco, 156
- Baṣra, in southern ‘Irāq, 42, 43, 44, 49, 51, 91, 100, 102, 110
- founded, 43
- in revolt of al-Mukhtār, 53
- site of Zanj revolt, 108, 114
- attacked by Abū Ṭāhir al-Jannābī, 148
- dā‘ī al-Kirmānī in, 184
- seized by al-Basāsīrī, 196
- base of the Ikhwān al-Ṣafā‘, 235, 236
- origin of Rāshid al-Dīn Sinān, 367
- Bassām b. ‘Abd Allāh al-Ṣayrafī, 92
- Bastām, in Persia, 394
- bātin*, 10
- in Shī‘ī thought, 83
- in doctrine of Abu'l-Khaṭṭāb, 86
- in doctrine of pre-Fātimid Ismā‘īlīs, 129–131, 167
- in Fātimid doctrine, 208, 215, 221, 226
- in Tayyibī doctrine, 269
- in Nizārī doctrines of *qiyāma* and *satr*, 360, 362, 364–365, 366, 380–381, 382, 441
- in writings of Nizārī Quhistānī, 412
- in writings of Ḥaydar Āmulī, 420
- for Sufis, 419
- for Ḥurūfiyya, 421
- in *Pandiyāt* of Mustansır bi'llāh II, 432–433
- in Aga Khan III's teachings, 492
- Bātinīs, Bātinīyya (the Esotericists), 8, 10, 24, 85, 116, 130
- Batriyya, branch of Zaydīs, 74
- Bausani, Alessandro, 32
- Bāwandids, of Daylam, 337, 344, 346, 357, 367, 374
- bay‘a* (oath of allegiance), 36, 49, 178, 242, 293, 496
- Bayān b. Sam‘ān al-Tamīmī, eponym of Bayāniyya, 60, 61, 72
- Bayāniyya, extremist Shī‘ī group, 61, 63, 72
- Baybars I, Mamlūk sultan, 309, 398–402
- passim*

- Bayhaq (Sabzawār), in Khurāsān, 345
 Bāysunghur b. Shāhrukh, Timūrid, 308
 Bayt al-Hikma (House of Wisdom), Baghdad, 223
bayt al-māl, 42
 Bazda, village near Nasaf, in Transoxania, 113
 Bazgash, Saljūq amīr, 329
 bedouins, 14, 122–123, 201, 348
 early supporters of Ismā‘īlism, 114–116
beglerbegi, 460, 469
 Beirut, 313
 Bektāshiyā, Sufi order, 421
 Benjamin of Tudela, Spanish rabbi and traveller, 12, 20–21
 Berbers, 54, 115, 125, 126, 141, 183
 in Sicily, 143
 in Khārijī revolt of Abū Yazīd, 146–147
 as faction in Fātimid army, 175, 178–179, 193
 jazīra of, 218
 see also individual tribes
 Berchem, Max van, orientalist, 28
 Bertel’s, Andrey E., 31
 Bhakti tradition, of South Asia, 449
 Bhārmal, minister to Rājpūt king of Gujarat, 276, 284
 al-Bharūchī, Hasan b. Nūh, Ṭayyibī Bohra author, 91, 279
 Bhopal, in India, 289
 Bhuj, in India, 447
 Bianquis, Thierry, 32
 Bibī Sarkāra, wife of Shāh Khalil Allāh III, 462, 463, 464
 Bibī Ṭal‘at Murādī, leader of Murād Mīrzā’is, 491
 Bible, 11, 272, 365
 Bibliothèque Nationale, Paris, 23, 28
bid‘a (an innovation in belief or practice), 35, 63
 Bīdar, in the Deccan, 429, 455
 Bihbahānī, Muḥammad ‘Alī, Twelver *mujtahid*, 462
 Bijāpūr, 448, 453, 455
 Bilāl b. Jarīr al-Muhammadī, Zuray‘id vizier, 257
 Bilbays, 178
 Billizma, in North Africa, 127
 Binältigīn (Inaltigīn), Khwārazmian general, 384
 Birāsh, fortress, near Ṣan‘ā, 260
 Bīrjand, in Quhistān (southern Khurāsān), 353, 359, 406, 411, 412, 469, 491, 494
 Bīrjandī, Hasan b. Ṣalāḥ, *ra’īs*, *see* Hasan b. Ṣalāḥ Munshī Bīrjandi
 Bishr b. Hātim b. Ahmad b. ‘Imrān, Hamdānid, 260
 Bīsutūn, ruler of Rūyān, 374
 Biyapīsh, in Gilān, 415, 417
 Black Stone of the Ka‘ba (*al-hajar al-aswad*), 149, 151
 Blois, F. de, 107
 Bobrinskoy, Count Alexis A., Russian scholar, 29
 Bohemond IV, prince of Antioch, 389
 Bohemond VI, prince of Antioch, 399, 401
 Bohras, Bohoras, 3, 30, 31, 201, 236, 238, 241, 276–279, 290–295, 298, 299
 Dā’ūdī–Sulaymānī schism, 239, 280–282
 ‘Alawī schism, 282
 fiqh for, 169, 280
 Sunnī schism, 277–278
 of East Africa, 291, 486
 see also Dā’ūdī; Sulaymānīs
 Bombay (Mumbai), 29, 31, 485
 Ivanow’s work, 30–31
 Ismā‘īlī libraries, 33, 241
 Dā’ūdīs of, 288, 290–291, 292, 293, 294
 Sulaymānīs of, 297, 298
 Āghā Khāns (Aga Khans) at, 407, 467–468, 472, 473–476 *passim*, 477, 480–497 *passim*, 500
 Nizārīs (Khojas) of, 473–476, 484, 492
 Fidā’ī in, 492
 Bombay High Court, 28, 289, 474–475, 476, 481, 486, 488, 491
 Bombay Legislative Council, 477
 Boyle, John Andrew, 305
 Brethren of Purity, *see* Ikhwān al-Ṣafā’
 Brett, Michael, 32
 Britain, British, 286, 291, 468–470, 469–473 *passim*, 474, 477, 481–482, 484, 493, 495
 see also England; India; United Kingdom

- Broach, in Gujarāt, 447
- Browne, Edward Granville, 26
- Bū Sa‘id dynasty, of ‘Umān and Zanzibar, 291
- Bughrā Khān, Qarakhānid ruler, 203
- Bujh Nirañjan*, South Asian Sufi work, 444
- Bujrai, Mongol officer, 397
- Bukayr b. Māhān, 76, 77
- Bukhārā (now in Uzbekistan), 29, 79, 113, 187, 202, 203, 383, 397, 470, 495
- Buluggīn (or Buluqqīn) b. Zīrī, founder of the Zīrid dynasty of Ifrīqiya, 157, 162, 176
- al-Bundārī, al-Fath b. ‘Alī, historian, 308, 337
- Buqa-Temür, Mongol general, 394
- Būrāniyya, *see* Baqliyya
- Burchard (or Gerhard), envoy of Emperor Barbarossa, 12–13
- Burckhardt, John Lewis, orientalist, 27
- Burhān I Niżām Shāh, 454–455
- Burhānpūr, 285, 286, 447
- Burhanpur Durgah Case, of 1925, 288
- Burhānpūrī, Quṭb al-Dīn Sulaymānījī, Dā’udī author, 240
- Būrī, Mongol officer, 391
- Būrī, Tāj al-Mulūk, Būrid ruler, 348
- Būrids (Börids), of Damascus and southern Syria, 334
- Burma, 477, 481, 482
- al-Bursuqī, Āq Sunqur, governor of Mawṣil, 347
- Bustān al-jāmi‘*, anonymous history, 309
- Būyids (Buwayhids), of Persia and ‘Irāq, 139, 162, 176, 183, 185, 203, 311, 316, 363
- patrons of ‘Abbāsids, 150, 185
- and Qarmatīs: allied against Fātimids, 161; fought in southern ‘Irāq, 185
- declining power in Syria, 175
- developed Shi‘ī practices, 177–178
- opposed by Saljūqs, 195–196
- of Fārs, 203
- Buzā‘a, in Syria, 370
- Buzurg-Ummīd, Kiyā, Nizārī leader and lord of Alamūt, 302, 324, 343, 344–346, 352–355, 358, 360
- Byzantine empire: and the Fātimids, 43, 138, 140, 145, 156, 173–179 *passim*,
- 180–181, 183, 192, 197; disputed Italy and Sicily, 143–144; Syria, 173, 175–176, 178
- Byzantium, *see* Byzantine empire
- cabalistic traditions, 134, 421
- Caesarea (Qaysariyya), 243, 313
- Cahen, Claude, 62, 426
- Cairo (al-Qāhira), 5, 6, 147, 175, 178, 182–199 *passim*, 203, 205, 213, 221, 242, 246, 310, 312, 313, 348, 401, 482, 504
- founded, 138, 159
- Fātimids move from Ifrīqiya to, 183
- Geniza of, 140
- attacked by al-Hasan al-A‘ṣam, 162, 163
- ravaged in time of al-Mustanṣir, 193–194
- described by Nāṣir-i Khusraw, 206
- attacked by Atsiz, 197, 313
- libraries destroyed, 253
- Calabria, in Italy, 143, 144, 145
- Calcutta, 472, 473, 475, 481
- calendar, of the Ismā‘ili Bohras, 295
- caliphate, 36–37; separate from imamate, 81
- see also* Fātimid caliphate
- Cambay, port, in Gujarāt, 200, 201, 276, 277, 278, 279
- Canada, 497, 501
- Canard, Marius, 31
- cannabis sativa*, *see* ḥashīsh
- Caprotti, Giuseppe, 28
- Carmatians, *see* Qarmatīs
- Carron, Andrée, third wife of Aga Khan III, 483
- Casanova, Paul, orientalist, 28, 235
- Caspian provinces, region, in northern Persia, 152, 313
- Zaydī Shi‘īs of, 24, 153, 314
- Nāṣir-i Khusraw in, 206
- histories of, 308, 408
- Nizārīs in, 346, 387–388, 410
- after Mongol conquest, 415
- under Ṣafawids, 417
- Nuqtawiyya of, 422
- see also* Daylam; Gilān; Gurgān; Rūyān; Ṭabaristān

Caspian Sea, 19, 112
 Caucasus, 346, 383, 421, 430
 Central Asia, 2, 7, 29, 30, 31, 33, 79, 186,
 225, 316, 373, 391, 420, 427, 428,
 503
 provenance of *Umm al-kitāb*, 93–94
 Fātimid *da‘wa* to, 139, 203
 Nizārīs of, 4, 316, 403, 406, 409, 410,
 412, 414, 434, 477, 488, 494,
 502–503; Qāsim-Shāhī *da‘wa* to,
 405, 432, 440, 451, 456
 and Nizārī–Musta‘lī schism, 243
 see also Badakhshan; Transoxania;
 Tajikistan, etc.
 Ceylon *see* Sri Lanka; Sarandib
 Chaghri Beg, Saljūq *amīr*, 205
 chancery, of the Fātimids, *see dīwān*
 al-înshā’
 Chandabhai Gulla Case, of 1917, 288, 289
 Chāwlī (Jāwali), *see* Fakhr al-Dīn Chāwlī
 Cherubim, *see* karūbiyyūn
 China, Chinese, 15, 19, 138, 433, 494, 496
 Chingiz Khan, 382–383, 386, 388, 397
 Chirāgh-rawshan, rite for the dead in
 Badakhshan, 494
 Chitral, in northern Pakistan, 95, 495
 Christianity, 10, 20, 130, 143, 369
 and *mawâlī*, 56
 and Ibn Dayṣān, 102
 origin of Sabaeon doctrines, 227
 Christians, 11, 34, 335, 372, 430
 appointed to high office by Fātimids,
 177, 212, 223, 244, 249
 persecuted by the Fātimid caliph
 al-Hākim, 180–181
 formed alliances with/against Muslims,
 8, 388
 paying tribute to Nizārīs, 389–390
 civil wars, *see under* Islam
 clients of Arabs, *see* *mawâlī*
 Collège de France, Paris, 22
 Companions of the Prophet
 (*sahāba*), 36–37, 39, 44, 74, 181
 condemned by Shī‘is, 66, 74, 181
 apostasy of, 83
 Congress Party (of India), 483
 Conrad of Montferrat, king of the Latin
 state of Jerusalem, 13, 21, 372–373

Constantine VII, Byzantine emperor, 144
 Constantine IX Monomachus, Byzantine
 emperor, 197–198
 converts to Islam, non-Arab, *see mawâlī*
 Copts, Christian community in
 Egypt, 159, 177, 180
 Corbin, Henry, 31
 on *walâya* ('initiation'), 83–84
 on early Ismā‘ilism, 92
 on *Umm al-kitāb*, 93
 on Nāṣir-i Khusraw, 206
 on Ṭayyibī doctrine, 270, 273
 on Nizārī doctrine, 361
 Cordoba, 142, 157, 161
 Corsica, 144
 cosmogony, *see creation*
 cosmology, 440
 in doctrine of early Ismā‘ilis, 131,
 133–136
 in Druze doctrine, 189–190
 Ismā‘ili Neoplatonic doctrine of, 134,
 222–234 *passim*
 in doctrine of Ḥamīd al-Dīn
 al-Kirmānī, 233–234
 in doctrine of Ṭayyibīs, 267, 269–274
 in *ginâns*, 409
 court cases, *see under* Khojas
 creation
 in doctrine of Abū Manṣūr, 70
 in doctrine of al-Mughīra, 69–70
 in doctrine of Abu'l-Khaṭṭāb, 86
 in doctrine of early Ismā‘ilis, 133–135
 see also cosmology
 Croker-Poole, Sarah (Begum Salimah),
 first wife of Aga Khan IV, 504
 Crusaders, 11, 331–332, 352
 provided earliest Christian/Western
 reports of Nizārīs, 11–12, 13–15, 22,
 368
 and Assassin legends, 328–329
 and Nizārīs, 11, 13, 301, 310, 334, 347,
 369–373 *passim*, 390
 opposed Fātimids, 243–244, 250–251
 opposed Saladin, 254, 369
 threatened Damascus, 349, 350
 opposed Nûr al-Dīn, 369
 opposed Baybars I, 400–401
 used assassination, 328

- Crusades
 First (1096–1099), 11, 244
 Third (1189–1192), 13, 372
 Fifth (1217–1221), 13
 Seventh (1248–1254), 14, 390
- Ctesiphon, *see* Mada'in
- Curdistan, *see* Kurdistān
- Curzon, George N., Viceroy of India, 481
- Cutch, in Gujarāt, 285, 291, 447, 464, 472, 485
- cyclical history, 62, 65, 226
 early Ismā‘īlī, 131–133
 Fātimid Ismā‘īlī, 223
 Ṭayyibī, 238–239, 269–272
 Nizārī, 364–365, 381, 382, 440
 Ḥurūfī, 421
see also dawr
 cyclical interpretation of religious history,
see cyclical history
- Da‘ā’im al-Islām*, of al-Qādī
 al-Nu‘mān, 30, 169, 170, 214, 215, 222, 280, 294, 297, 299
- Dachraoui (al-Dashrāwī), Farhat
 (Farḥāt), 32
- Dādū, *pīr*, 447
- Dahhāk b. Jandal, 348, 352
- dah-yik (tithe), 433, 491
- dā‘ī (summoner), 2, 3, 98, 232
 ‘Abbāsid, 76
 Fātimid, 141, 181, 215, 219, 311
 in Druze organization, 190
 Zuray‘ids as, 256–257
 Sulayhids as, 263–264
 Tayyibī, 263–266, 275–276
 of Daylam, 314, 327, 337, 344, 365
 Nizārī, 301, 331–333, 360–361, 412, 432; in doctrine of *qiyyāma*, 361, 364; Qāsim-Shāhī, 439–440, 441
see also da‘wa
- dā‘ī al-balāgh, 218, 275, 285
- dā‘ī al-du‘āt (chief *dā‘ī*), 6, 168, 195, 204, 207, 214, 216, 220, 234, 253, 266, 311, 340
- al-dā‘ī al-mahdūd* (or *al-mahṣūr*), 218
- al-dā‘ī al-mutlaq*, 218, 241
 Tayyibī 239, 264–269 *passim*, 275
 in Hujūmiyya doctrine, 284
- Dā‘ūdī, 285, 287, 289, 290, 292
- Sulaymānī, 298, 299
- dā‘ī qabā’il Yām*, 298
- Damascus (Dimashq), 8, 17, 47, 74, 101, 123, 191, 197, 313, 334
 disputed by Qarmaṭīs of Bahrayn and ‘Abbāsids, 161–162
 under Fātimids, 163, 173–175, 179, 192, 216
 in Nizārī–Musta‘lī schism, 245
- Nizārī centre, 332, 333, 347–348
- Saladin took, 369
 under Mongols, 398–399
- Damāwand, in Persia, 321, 394
- Dāmghān, in Persia, 17, 313–314, 321, 353, 384, 386, 387, 388
- Dāmigh al-bātil*, of ‘Alī b. Muḥammad
 Ibn al-Walīd, 210
- Dante, Italian poet, 19
- dār al-da‘wa*, 330, 333, 348, 400
- dār al-hijra* (abode of emigration), 108–109, 126, 149, 166, 326–328, 329, 339, 349
- Dār al-‘Ilm (Dār al-Hikma), Cairo, 181, 184, 199, 204, 220, 244, 253
- dār al-inshā’*, *see dīwān al-inshā’*
- Dara, castle, in Quhistān, 319, 320
- Dārā Shukhō, Mughal prince, 283
- al-Darazī, Muḥammad b. Ismā‘il, Druze leader, 187, 188
- Daraziyya, *see* Druzes
- Darband (Bāb al-Abwāb), 154
- Dar es Salaam, in Tanzania, 291, 484, 486, 497
- al-Dargazīnī, Qiwām al-Dīn, Saljūq vizier, 337–338
- Darrūd, village near Nīshāpūr, 493
- darwīsh* (dervish), 412, 421, 432
- Dasa Avatāra, ginān*, 450
- Dashtāb, in Persia, 469
- Dasht-i Lüt, desert, in Persia, 469
- dassondh* (tithe), 443, 445, 448, 459, 474, 499
- Dastūr al-munajjimīn*, anonymous Ismā‘īlī work, 95
- Dā‘ūd, Saljūq sultan, 346, 356
- Dā‘ūd b. al-‘Ādīd, Ḥāfiẓī imam, 253, 254

- Dā'ūd b. 'Ajabshāh, Ṭayyibī *dā'i muṭlaq*, 280–281, 295
- Dā'ūd b. 'Alī, governor of Medina, 91
- Dā'ūd b. Sulaymān b. Dā'ūd b. al-'Ādīd, 254
- Dā'ūd Burhān al-Dīn b. Qutbshāh, first *Dā'ūdī dā'i*, 280–282, 283, 295, 296
- Dā'ūdī Atbā'-i Malak Vakīl, *see* Artāliswālās
- Dā'ūdīs, Dā'ūdiyya, branch of Ṭayyibīs, 30, 32–33, 276, 281–295
studied *Rasā'il Ikhwān al-Ṣafā'*, 236
fiqh for, 172, 294
historiography, 240–241
schism with Sulaymānīs, 3, 239, 280–282
da'wa organization, 287, 289, 292–293
customs, 293–295
reformist groups, 289–290
in East Africa, 291–292
see also Bohras
- da'wa* (Persian, *da'wat*), 3
 'Abbāsid, 76–77
 early Ismā'īlī 2, 98, 102, 104, 107–116
 passim, 128
- Fātimid, 137–138, 141, 143, 144, 158, 180, 183–184, 192, 198, 202–207
 passim, 210, 213–214, 238, 310–314
- Hāfiẓī, 253, 255–260
- Ṭayyibī, 172, 260, 261, 264, 271, 273, 275–276, 277, 280
- Dā'ūdī, 287, 289, 292–293
- Sulaymānī, 295, 298
- Nizārī, 301, 325, 340, 344, 365–366, 382; Qāsim-Shāhī, 405, 410, 425, 431, 438–440, 451; to Syria, 331–334; to India, 385–386, 442–450
related to spiritual hierarchy, 134–135, 230–234 *passim*
- al-da'wa al-hādiya* (the rightly guiding mission), 2, 116, 213, 216, 292
- al-da'wa al-jadīda* (the new preaching), 339
- al-da'wa al-qadīma* (the old preaching), 339
- da'wat*, *see* *da'wa*
- da'wat-i jadīd*, *see* *al-da'wa al-jadīda*
- da'wat-i qiyāmat*, 360
- da'wat-khāna*, *see* *dār al-da'wa*
- dawlā*, 2, 137, 211, 214
- dawr*; *adwār* (cycles, eras)
in doctrine of Ibn al-Harb, 62
in *ghulāt* doctrine, 65
in *Umm al-kitāb*, 93, 98
in early Ismā'īlī doctrine, 131–132
in Fātimid doctrine, 164–165, 208
in doctrine of Iranian school of philosophical Ismā'īlism (4th/10th cent.), 226–228, 231–232
in Ṭayyibī doctrine, 269, 282, 380–382
in Nizārī doctrine of *qiyāma*, 359–362, 380–382
see also cyclical history; *dawr al-kashf*; *dawr al-satr*
- dawr al-fatra*, 226–227
- dawr al-jirm*, 165
- dawr al-kashf* (period of manifestation), 128, 132, 165, 238–239, 271, 272, 288, 381
- dawr al-satr* (period of concealment)
for pre-Fātimid Ismā'īlīs, 96, 118, 128, 132, 326
for Fātimid Ismā'īlīs, 164–165
in Nizārī doctrine of Alamūt period, 364, 375, 380–382, 441
in Musta'īlī-Ṭayyibī doctrine, 238–239, 262, 271–272, 284
- dawr al-zuhūr*, *see* *dawr al-kashf*
- dawr-i qiyāmat*, 360
- dawr-i shari'at*, 361
- Day of Judgement, 65, 133, 208, 232
see also *qiyāma*
- Daylam, Daylamān, region in northern Persia, 314, 317, 324, 327, 338, 346, 355, 374, 385, 392
- (dissident) Ismā'īlīs of, 112, 121, 152, 154, 167
- troops formed faction in Fātimid army, 178, 193
- jazīra* of, 218
- Nizārīs of, 304, 316, 320, 358, 410, 416–417; Ḥasan-i Ṣabbāh's activities, 314–316, 324; and the Mongols, 394–395; Muḥammad-Shāhīs, 414, 415–416, 451
- under Ṣafawids, 417

- Daysam b. Ibrāhīm al-Kurdī, 154
 Dayṣāniyya, 102
 De la Ravalière, Pierre Alexandre, French bishop and scholar, 21
 de Sacy, *see* Silvestre de Sacy
 Deccan, the 283, 298, 428, 429, 448, 452–456 *passim*, 461
 Defrémy, Charles François, orientalist, 26
 Delhi, 277, 482, 483
 Deorhī, 315
 see also *da‘wa*; Dā‘ūdī
 dervish, *see* *darwīsh*
 Dhahabiyya, Sufi order, 427, 435
 Dhimār, in Yaman, 265
dhimmīs (adherents of a revealed religion, especially Judaism and Christianity, living under protection or *dhimma* of Islamic law), 55, 177, 180–181
 Dhū Jibla, Șulayḥid capital, in Yaman, 200, 257, 263
 Dhū Marmar, fortress, near Ṣan‘ā’, 267, 268
 al-Dhu‘ayb b. Mūsā al-Wādī ‘ī
 al-Hamdānī, first Tayyibī *dā‘ī*
 muṭlaq, 264–265, 275
 Dhuhl, Banū, of ‘Irāq, 149
 Dhu'l-Faqār ‘Alī, Nizārī imam, *see* Khalīl Allāh I
 Dhu'l-Qarnayn, 365
dīdār, visiting the imam, 433, 434, 457, 459, 463, 473, 492, 502
 Dieterici, Friedrich, orientalist, 28
 Dihkhudā, pseudonym of Ḥasan-i Ṣabbāh (q.v.), 314
 Dirghām, Fātimid vizier, 251
 Dir‘iyya, near Riyād, 296
 divine command, *see* *amr*
 divinity of imams, 64, 86, 93, 186, 189
dīwān
 as registry, 43
 as Fātimid administration, 213
Dīwān, of Fidā‘ī Khurāsānī, 407
Dīwān, of Nāṣir-i Khusraw, 205
dīwān al-amwāl, 213
dīwān al-inshā’ or *al-rasā’il* (chancery), 6, 139, 203, 213, 245
dīwān al-jaysh (*wa’l-rawātib*), 213
dīwān al-majālis, 213
 Diyā‘ al-Dīn Jiwābhā‘ī b. Nūh, ‘Alawī Bohra *dā‘ī*, 282
 Diyā‘ al-Mulk Aḥmad b. Niẓām al-Mulk, Saljūq vizier, 337
 Diyār Bakr, 345
 Dizbād, village, in northern Khurāsān, 406, 407, 492–493, 494
 Diz-i Gunbadān, *see* Girdkūh
 Dizkūh, *see* Shāhdiz
 Dohad, in India, 291
 Dozy, Reinhart, orientalist, 26
 ‘drama in heaven’ in Tayyibī doctrine, 269, 270–271
 Druzes, Druses, 22, 23, 25, 67, 332, 348
 origins, 186–188
 ‘hidden imams’, 105
 doctrines, 189–190, 221, 372
 in Sind, 200
 designated as Muwahhidūn, 189
 scriptures, 107
 Du Cange, Charles du Fresne, 21
du‘afā, 382, 441
 dualism, 69–70, 102, 135–136
 Dubays, Mazyadid ruler, 196, 204
 Dumluwa, in Yaman, 257
 Duqāq, Saljūq ruler of Damascus, 331, 333, 334
durkhana (Persian, *darb-i khāna*), 473
 Durūz, *see* Druzes
 Dūst Muḥammad, founder of the Bārakzāy dynasty of Afghanistan, 470
 East Africa
 Dā‘ūdīs (Bohras) of, 291–292, 293, 486
 Nizārīs (Khojas) of, 291, 477, 481, 484–487, 488, 497, 499, 503
 East African Muslim Welfare Society, 488
 Eastern Ismā‘īlīs, *see* Nizārīs
 École des Langues Orientales Vivantes, Paris, 22
 economics, *see* socio-economic conditions
 Edessa (al-Ruhā‘), now in Turkey, 102, 331
 education, 289, 290, 300, 487–488, 492–493, 498, 502, 503
 Edward, prince, of England, the future King Edward I, 402

- Edward VII, king of Great Britain, 474, 481
- Egypt, Egyptians, 11, 12, 14, 15, 21, 22, 44, 78, 125, 127, 142, 200, 400, 428, 496
histories of Fātimids, 139–140
famines, 192, 194, 198
‘Abd Allāh al-Mahdī in, 125
seat of Fātimid empire, 103, 138, 162–163; invasion/conquest, 142, 143, 149, 158–159, 161–162; loss, 251–253; *da’wa* in, 143, 202, 214–215; organization, 176, 212–213; treatment of non-Ismā‘īlis, 172, 180, 192
pro-Fātimid plots, 253–254
in Nizārī–Musta‘lī schism, 241–242, 324–325, 342, 363
invaded by Qarmaṭīs, 162; by Crusaders, 244, 250, 251
in Hafizī–Tayyibī schism, 248
abandoned Ismā‘īlism, 252
Tayyibīs of, 238, 261
under Ayyūbids, 253–254
under Mamlūks, 398
Hasan-i Sabbāh in, 312–313
Elements of Theology, of Proclus, 224
- Elidigüzids, of Arrān and Ādharbayjān, 377, 386
- Eligidei, Mongol commander, 388
- Encyclopaedia of Islam*, 30, 32
- England, 372, 388, 402
see further Britain; United Kingdom
- Enneads*, of Plotinus, 224
- Ephraim, Coptic patriarch, 177
- Epistles of the Brethren of Purity (. . . of the Sincere Brethren)* *see Rasā‘il Ikhwān al-Ṣafā‘*
- eras of human history, *see* cyclical history; *dawr*
- eschatology, 60, 119, 188, 189, 231–232, 267, 273–275, 366, 409
see also *qiyyāma*; soteriology
- esoteric interpretation, *see* *ta’wil*
- esotericism, 83–84, 129–130
see also *bātin*
- Euphrates river, 45, 122, 149
- Europe, Europeans, 1, 4, 11, 144, 310, 368, 388, 408, 476
- Dā‘ūdī immigration to, 291
- Aga Khan III in, 481–482
- Nizārī immigration to, 497, 500
and Assassin legends, 12–19 *passim*, 328–329
- exaggeration in religion, *see ghulāt*; *ghuluww*
- Fabri, Felix, Dominican friar and traveller, 20
- Faḍl ‘Alī Khān Qarabāghī, Qājār governor of Kirmān, 469
- Faḍl Allāh Astarābādī, founder of the Hurūfiyya, 421–422
- Faḍl b. Abī Yazīd, leader of anti-Fātimid revolt, 147, 157
- al-Faḍl b. Ja‘far b. al-Furāt, Fātimid *wāsiṭa*, 181
- al-Faḍl b. Ṣalīḥ, Fātimid general, 175, 181, 182
- al-Faḍl b. Shādhān, Imāmī scholar, 108
- al-Faḍl b. ‘Alī b. al-Faḍl, Qarmaṭī *dā‘ī*, 122
- Fahd, *ra’īs*, 368
- Fahd b. Ibrāhīm, Fātimid secretary, 179, 181
- Fahrasat al-kutub*, of Ismā‘īl b. ‘Abd al-Rasūl al-Majdū‘, *see Fihrist al-kutub*
- al-Fā’iz, Fātimid caliph, 259
- Fakhr al-Dawla Namāwar b. Bīsutūn, Bādūspānid, 387
- Fakhr al-Dīn, son of Tārmal, 276–277
- Fakhr al-Dīn Chāwlī (Jāwalī), atabeg of Fārs, 337
- Fakhr al-Dīn Muḥammad al-Rāzī, Sunnī theologian, 367
- falāsifa*, 232, 233, 234
- Falconet, Camille, 22
- Far East, 291
- al-Fārābī, Abū Naṣr Muḥammad, philosopher, 224, 233
- Farāhān, in central Persia, 423
- Faramā, 244
- Farghāna, in Central Asia, 203
- Faridūn Mīrzā, Qājār governor of Fārs, 465
- Farrukh Shāh, Āqā, son of Akbar Shāh, 482
- Fārs, in southern Persia, 203, 461, 469

- Ibn Mu‘āwiya in, 75
Ismā‘īlī dā‘is in, 102, 109, 202
 Fātimid *da‘wa* to, 203
 Nizārīs of, 321, 337, 436
 Ni‘mat Allāhiyya of, 427, 428
 Shāh Ṭāhir Dakkānī to, 453
 in Qājār conquest, 461
 Sardār Abu'l-Hasan Khān to, 465
 persecution of Sufis by Twelver
 ‘ulamā’, 465–466
Fārs-nāma, of Ibn al-Balkhī, 337
 Fās (Fez), in North Africa, 142, 156
 Fashāfūya, *see* Pashāpūya
Faṣl min al-lafẓ al-sharīf, of Abū Firās, 371
 fasting, *see* ṣawm
fath, 134–135, 190, 230–231
 Fath ‘Alī Khān (Shāh) Qājār, 27, 462,
 463–464, 465, 480
 Fātiyya, subgroup of Imāmiyya, 88
Fath-nāma, written by Juwaynī, 305
 Fātik, Fātimid governor of Aleppo, 183
 Fātima, daughter of the Prophet, 38, 48,
 57, 83, 94, 128, 273, 431
 Fātima, wife of Ja‘far al-Ṣādiq, 91
 Fātimid caliphate, 2, 310–311, 496
 established, 102, 128
 consolidated, 141–142, 143–144
 seat transferred to Egypt, 162–163
 decline, 197, 246, 311, 313
 collapse, 237, 252, 369
 organization, 211–213
 denounced in Baghdad manifesto of
 402/1011, 101, 102, 103, 185
 see also Fātimids
 Fātimids, 2, 3, 7, 123, 137, 237
 genealogy, 100–101, 104, 185
 as a branch of ‘Alids, 57, 73, 79, 83,
 96
 historiography, 32, 139, 305, 308
 North African phase, 128, 140–162;
 Sicily, 143–145
 Egyptian phase, 140, 162–211;
 conquest of Egypt, 158–159
 decline and overthrow, 197, 246–253,
 369
 in Syria, 173–176, 183, 192, 332; in
 Aleppo, supported by Saljūq Rīḍwān,
 333
 revolts against Ayyūbids, 253–254
 and Qarmaṭīs of Bahrayn, 9, 121,
 151–152, 161–162, 185
 and Byzantines, 143, 176, 180–181
 and Sulayhids, 198–200, 263–264
 and Zuray‘ids, 256–257
 and the Crusaders, 11, 243–244
 Nizārī plots against, 244, 325–326, 343,
 349
 Khārijī revolt against, 145–147
 supported Hāfiyya *da‘wa*, 238
 split by Nizārī–Musta‘lī schism, 242;
 see further Nizārī–Musta‘lī schism
 factions in army, 175, 178–179,
 193–194, 252
 trade with Europe, 181
 trade with India, 201
 literatur, 138, 221–234 *passim*;
 preserved by Ṭayyibīs, 241, 292
 heritage retained by Nizārīs of Syria,
 302, 309
 libraries, 5, 139, 253
 jurisprudence, 167–171
 racial and religious tolerance, 176–177
 doctrine, 221–223, 227–233; imamate,
 164–166, 186–188, 207–209; cyclical
 history, 221; Ismā‘īlī Neoplatonic
 cosmology, 232–233, 234
da‘wa, 202–207, 213–220;
 organization, 213–221; to Ifrīqiya,
 126–128; to Muslim East, 183–185,
 202–203, 206–207; to Yaman,
 198–199, 263–264
 Fātimiyyūn, 123, 128
 Faydābād, in Afghan Badakhshan, 207,
 495
 Faydbakhsh, Shāh Qāsim, Sufi master,
 427
 Faydī, Āṣaf b. ‘Alī Aşghar, *see* Fyzee, Asaf
 Ali Aşghar
 Fayyūm, 182
 Fergusson, Sir James, 477
 Fidā‘ī Khurāsānī, Muḥammad b. Zayn
 al-‘Ābidīn, Nizārī author, 407, 438,
 492–493
fidā‘īs (*fidāwīs*) (self-sacrificing devotees),
 passim, 23, 244, 328–329, 333, 336,
 343–356 12, 13–18 *passim*, 367, 368,
 370, 386, 389, 395–396, 401–402
fidāwīs, *see* *fidā‘īs*

- Fihrist al-kutub*, of Ismā‘il b. ‘Abd al-Rasūl al-Majdū‘, 285
- Filippini-Ronconi, Pio, 95, 310
- financial organization
- Dā‘ūdī, 293–294
 - Nizārī: Qāsim-Shāhī, 432–434, 443, 445–446, 447–448; Khoja, 474–475, 488, 500–501
- fiqh* (jurisprudence), 68–69, 167–172, 181, 222, 280, 407
- see also* law, of Nizārī community
- Firishta, Muhammad Qāsim Hindū Shāh Astarābādī, historian, 452–455 *passim*
- firman* (*farmān*), 433, 487–488, 492, 497, 499
- First Afghan War, 1838–1842, 469
- Fīrūz, early dā‘ī, 123, 125
- Fīrūzkūh, castle, in Daylam, 356, 394
- FitzGerald, Edward, 312
- fleets, 143, 144–145, 250
- France, 15, 144, 390
- scientific orientalism*, 22
 - embassy from Nizārī Imam Muhammad III, 14, 388
 - Aga Khan III in, 481, 483
 - Nizārī community of, 501
- Franks, *see* Crusaders
- Fraser, James Baillie, Scottish traveller, 27
- Frederick I Barbarossa, *see* Barbarossa
- Frederick II, emperor of Germany, 390
- Fundgruben des Orients*, 23
- Fustāt (Old Cairo), 125, 159, 177, 181, 190, 194, 246
- fuṣūl*, epistles, of lords of Alamūt, 304, 361
- Fuṣūl-i arba‘a* (*al-Fuṣūl al-arba‘a*), of Hasan-i Ṣabbāḥ, 340–342
- Fyzee, Asaf Ali Asghar, 30, 31, 172, 300
- Gabriel, *see* Jibrā‘il
- Galen (Jālinūs), 223
- Galiakot, in India, 277
- Gandhi, Mahatma, 483
- Ganja, in Transcaucasia, 386
- Ganod, in Gujarāt, 448
- garrison town, *see* *mīṣr*
- Gāwbāras, of Rustamdār, 417
- Geneva, 483, 496, 503
- Geniza, collection of papers, 140
- Genoa, in Italy, 144
- George V, king of Great Britain, 482
- Georgia (Gurjistān), 346, 356, 412
- Gerhard, *see* Burchard
- Germany, 14, 25, 390
- rule in East Africa, 291
 - agents in First World War, 482
- Ghadīr*, Shī‘ī feast, 177, 293
- Ghadīr Khumm, 39, 97, 178, 247, 293
- al-Ghāfā‘, *see* al-Fa’fā‘
- Ghālib, Muṣṭafā, 32
- ghāliya*, *see* *ghulāt*
- ghanīma* (booty), 42
- al-Gharbiyya, in lower Egypt, 249
- Gharīb Mīrzā (Mustanṣir bi’llāh III), Nizārī imam, 423, 425, 433, 435, 439
- Gharībī, *see* Khayrkhwāh-i Harātī
- Gharjistān, 111
- Ghāyat al-mawālid*, of al-Khaṭṭāb b. al-Hasan, 105, 107, 264
- ghayba* (occultation), 59, 60, 64, 191
- Ghayrat Khān, deputy of Dārā Shukōh in Gujarāt, 283
- al-Ghazālī, Abū Ḥāmid Muhammad, Sunnī theologian, 9–10, 209–210, 342
- Ghāzān, Ḫilkhanid, 305
- Ghażanfar, *mīr* of Hunza, 495
- Ghazna, in eastern Afghanistan, 325
- Ghaznawids, of Afghanistan and Khurāsān, 139, 167, 188, 195, 200, 205, 316
- Ghazza, in Palestine, 250, 251
- Ghiyāth, early Ismā‘ilī dā‘ī, 111, 112–113, 121–122
- Ghiyāth al-Dīn, brother of Jalāl al-Dīn Khwārazmshāh, 386–387
- Ghiyāth al-Dīn b. Humām al-Dīn Muhammad, *see* Khwānd Amīr
- Ghiyāth al-Dīn Muḥammad, Ghūrid, 374
- Ghiyāth al-Dīn Muḥammad, Ḫilkhanid vizier, son of Rashid al-Dīn, 307
- Ghiyāth al-Dīn Muḥammad I, Saljūq sultan, *see* Muḥammad Tapar
- Għulām ‘Ali b. Muḥammad, Muḥammad-Shāhī Nizārī author, 414, 454

- Ghulām Husayn (Khan Bahadur H.H. Malik), leader of Mahdībāghwālās, 288
- Ghulām Ḥusayn al-Ḥājj, *see* Ḥusam al-Din al-Ḥājj Ghulām Husayn *ghulāt*, 63–67, 75, 129, 430
in Ja‘far al-Ṣādiq’s circle, 84
and *Umm al-kitāb*, 93–94
and origin of Druze ideas, 186, 189
term *dā‘i* used by, 219
used assassination, 70, 328
denounced by Haydar Āmulī, 420
- ghuluww* (exaggeration in religion), 63, 64, 188
- Ghūr, region in Afghanistan, 111, 356
- Ghūrids, of Ghūr and Khurāsān, 356, 374, 376, 383
- Ghuzz, *see* Oghuz Turks
- Gīlān, in northern Persia, 344, 357, 375
early Ismā‘īlī *da‘wa* to, 112, 152
under Saljūqs, 337, 338
Nizārīs in, 342, 346, 355, 387, 392, 415
under Amīr Kiyā‘ī Sayyids, 415–416
Nuqṭawīs in, 422
under Ṣafawids, 417, 422
- Gīlānī, Mullā Shaykh ‘Alī, historian, 417
- Gilgit, in northern Pakistan, 495
- ginān* (*gnān*), 32, 385–386, 409, 442–451 *passim*, 457
- Girdbāzū, son of Shāh Ghāzī Rustam I, 344–345, 357
- Girkūh, fortress, near Dāmghān, in Persia, 112, 316, 384
Marco Polo’s possible visit to, 17
Nizārīs of, 321, 337, 342, 343–344, 353; in Mongol invasions, 391, 394, 397, 398, 401, 410, 411
- Girgenti, in Sicily, 143, 144
- Girishk, in Afghanistan, 469
- Global Center for Pluralism, Ottawa, 503
- gnosticism (‘*irfān*), 84, 102, 270, 273, 420–421, 428
in doctrine of: Ismā‘īlīs, 84, 130, 135; Mandaean, 135; Manichaeans, 93, 136; Mughīriyya, 69–70; Mukhammisa, 94; Nusayrīs, 194
- Christian, 102
- Valentinian, 69, 93
in *Umm al-kitāb*, 93–94
- Goa, in India, 453
- Goeje, Michael Jan de, orientalist, 26, 151
- Golconda, in the Deccan, 455
- Goldziher, Ignaz, orientalist, 34
- Gorno-Badakhshan region, in Tājikistān, 408, 495, 502
- Gospels, 93
- Great Britain, *see* Britain; England; United Kingdom
- Great Resurrection, *see* *qiyāmat al-qiyāmāt*
- Greek philosophy, 222, 223, 237
- Greeks, in Sicily, 143
- Gregory IX, Pope, 390
- Griffini, Eugenio, orientalist, 28
- guilds (*aṣnāf*), Islamic, 115
- Gujarāt, 30, 33, 138, 280, 286, 472
da‘wa activities to: early Ismā‘īlī, 201; Fāṭimid, 200–201; Ṭāyyibī, 238, 268, 276; Nizārī, 385, 386, 457; Qāsim-Shāhī, 438, 443, 447–448, 457; Ṭāyyibīs (subsequently Dā‘ūdīs) of, 276–280 *passim*, 290–291, 292, 294
- Sulaymānīs of, 298–299
- ‘Alawī Bohras of, 282
- Nizārīs of, 409, 448, 477; Mōmnas, 448
- Imām-Shāhīs of, 444–447
- Nīzām-Shāhī state and, 455
emigration to East Africa, 485–486
- Gujarātī (language), 240, 294, 299, 409, 432, 446
- Gulshan-i Ibrāhīmī*, *see* *Ta’rīkh-i Firishta*
- Gulshan-i rāz* of Maḥmūd Shabistarī, 419, 427, 428, 454
- Gümüştigin, ruler of Aleppo, 369–370
- Gurgān, in Persia, 112, 152, 155
- Guyard, Stanislas, orientalist, 27–28
- Güyük, Great Khan, 388
- Habbārid dynasty, of Sind, 167
- Habīb b. Mużāhir, 49, 50
- Habīb al-Dīn Muhibb Allāh, grandson of Ni‘mat Allāh Wali Kirmānī, 429

- Habīb Ibrāhīm, leader of the Barbhais dissident Nizārī Khojas, 474–476
- Habibbhais, Ahmed, Barbhais dissident Khoja, 476
- al-Hādī, ‘Abbāsid caliph, 89
- al-Hādī, Nizārī imam, 364
- Hadīqat al-ma‘ānī*, of Fidā’ī Khurāsānī, 407
- hadīth*, 39, 69, 80, 83, 92, 103, 111, 169, 170, 181, 222
- Haḍramawt, in Arabia, 199, 296
- al-Hāfiẓ, Faṭimid caliph, 238, 246–248 *passim*, 249–250, 253, 256, 257, 258, 261–262, 265, 266
- Hāfiẓ Abrū, historian, 307–308
- Hāfiżīs, Hāfiżiyah, branch of Musta‘lians, 3, 200, 238, 240, 247–248, 249–250, 253, 254, 255–260, 262, 265, 325
- Haft bāb*, of Abū Ishaq Quhistānī, 433
- Haft bāb-i Bābā Sayyidnā*, anonymous Nizārī work, 303, 365
- Hajar, in eastern Arabia, 110, 148
- al-hajar al-aswad*, *see* Black Stone of the Ka‘ba
- Hajīra, fortress, in Syria, 370
- hajj* (pilgrimage to Mecca), 39, 126, 169, 294, 359, 442, 468
- al-Hajjāj b. Yūsuf, Umayyad governor of ‘Irāq, 53–54, 56, 71
- Hājjī Ākhūnd, *see* Fidā’ī Khurāsānī
- Hājjī Bibī, daughter of Jangi Shāh, 481, 491
- Hajji Bibi Case, of 1908, 481, 491
- Hājjī Mīrzā Āqāsī, Qājār chief minister, 467–468 *passim*, 472
- Hājjī Muḥammad ‘Alī, governor of Shahr-i Bābak, 468
- Hājjī Zamān Khān, Qājār governor of Yazd, 463
- al-Hajūr, clan, of Yaman, 264
- Hakam, Banū, of Yaman, 266
- al-Hakam II, Umayyad caliph in Spain, 157
- al-Hākim, Faṭimid caliph, 105, 155, 158, 178–181, 182–191 *passim*, 202, 211, 215, 247
divinity for Druzes, 186–189, 207
- al-Hākim, mosque, Cairo, 214, 290
- Hakīm ‘Alī Gilānī, physician to the Mughal emperor Akbar, 281
- al-Hakīm al-Munajjim, Nizārī leader in Syria, 332–333, 334
- Hākimiyah, *see* Druzes
- Halam b. Shaybān, dā’ī of Sind, 104, 167
- al-Hallāj, al-Ḥusayn b. Manṣūr, Sufi master, 148
- Halm, Heinz, 32, 123, 133
- Hamā, in Syria, 100, 335, 349, 350, 370, 398, 399, 400, 401, 408, 489–490
- Hamadān, in Persia, 111, 202, 346, 356, 377, 392, 396, 418, 436
- Hamd Allāh Mustawfī Qazwīnī, historian and geographer, 26, 307
- Hamdān, Banū, of Yaman, 198–199, 255, 257–258, 259, 264–265, 268
- Hamdān, district in Yaman, 298
- Hamdān Qarmaṭ, Qarmaṭī leader in ‘Irāq, 102, 107–109, 110, 116–117, 120, 121, 124, 125
- Hamdani, Abbas, 32, 107, 236
- al-Hamdānī, al-Ḥusayn b. Fayd Allāh, 30
- al-Hamdānī, Muḥammad ‘Alī b. Fayd Allāh, Dā’ūdī Bohra scholar, 287
- Hamdānids, of ‘Irāq and Syria, 161, 175, 177, 178, 183, 194
- Hamdānids, of Ṣan‘ā’ 200, 238, 255, 257–260 *passim*, 266, 267
- Hamdūn, Banū, of North Africa, 157, 160
- Hāmid al-Dīn al-Kirmānī, *see* al-Kirmānī, Hāmid al-Dīn
- al-Hāmid il-līlāh Dā’ūd b. al-‘Āqid, Hāfiżī imam, *see* Dā’ūd b. al-‘Āqid
- al-Hāmidī, ‘Alī b. Hātim, Tayyibī dā’ī *muṭlaq*, 266
- al-Hāmidī, Hātim b. Ibrāhīm, Tayyibī dā’ī *muṭlaq*, 236, 259, 265–266
- al-Hāmidī, Ibrāhīm b. al-Ḥusayn, Tayyibī dā’ī *muṭlaq*, 106, 261, 264–265, 266, 269–270, 275
- Hammād, Banū, of the Maghrib, 180, 263
- Hammād b. Buluggīn b. Zīrī, founder of the Hammādid dynasty, 180
- Hammādids, of the Maghrib, 180, 202
- Hammer(-Purgstall), Joseph von, orientalist and diplomat, 25–26

Index

721

- Hamza b. ‘Alī b. Ahmad, Druze leader, 187–190 *passim*
- Hamza b. ‘Umāra al-Barbarī, 59–60
- Ḥanafī Sunnism, 80, 172, 324, 453
- Ḥanafids, branch of ‘Alids, 57, 58, 60, 76, 79–80
- Ḥanbalī Sunnism, 172, 296
- Ḥanīfa, Banū, 52
- haqā’iq*, 129–132, 169, 222, 265, 267, 268, 269, 381, 440
- haqīqa*
for early Ismā‘īlīs, 129–132
in Nizārī doctrine, 360, 361, 364, 366, 380–381, 382; Qāsim-Shāhī, 433, 442
for Sufis, 366, 431
in doctrine of Ḥaydar Āmulī, 420
in *Pandiyāt* of Mustansir bi’llah II, 433
- haqq al-nafs*, 294
- haqq-i imām*, 434
- Harāt, 111, 113, 393, 411, 419, 422, 428, 429, 431, 434, 465, 469, 470
- Harāz, in Yaman, 198–199, 255, 259, 265–266, 267, 268, 291, 296, 297, 298
- Harbiyya, subgroup of Kaysāniyya, 62–63
- Hārij, in India, 277
- Hārithiyya, *see* Harbiyya
- Harrān, in ‘Irāq, 77, 192, 227
- Hārūn (Aaron), 132
- Hārūn b. Gharib, ‘Abbāsid general, 149
- Hārūn al-Rashid, ‘Abbāsid caliph, 89, 96
- Hārūnī Zaydī Sayyids, of Timjān, 416
- Harūrā’, in ‘Irāq, 46
- Harūriyya, early Khārijīs 46
- Harvard University, 496, 504
- al-Hasā, *see* al-Aḥsā’
- Hasan, *pīr*, Ismā‘īlī *wālī* in Gujarāt, 277
- Hasan, Hasan Ibrāhīm, 32, 151
- Hasan, son of the Fātimid caliph al-Ḥāfiẓ, 249
- Hasan II ‘alā dhikrihi’l-salām, Nizārī imam and lord of Alamūt, 302, 357–363, 364–370 *passim*, 378, 380–381, 385
- Nizārid Fātimid ancestry, 363–364
- Hasan III, Nizārī imam, *see* Jalāl al-Dīn Hasan III
- Hasan Ādām Qaṣrānī, Nizārī leader in Persia, 343
- Hasan ‘Alī (Sayyid Hasan Beg), Nizārī imam, 459
- Hasan ‘Alī Mīrzā, Murād Mīrzā’s leader, 491
- Hasan ‘Alī Shāh, Āghā Khān I, *see* Āghā Khān I, Hasan ‘Alī Shāh
- al-Hasan al-A‘ṣam, Qarmaṭī commander in Bahrayn, 161–162, 163, 173
- al-Hasan al-‘Askari, Twelver imam, 89, 108
- al-Hasan b. ‘Abd Allāh b. ‘Alī b. al-Walīd, Tayyibī dā‘ī *muṭlaq*, 268
- Hasan b. Ādām b. Sulaymān, *wālī*, 278
- al-Hasan b. ‘Alī, Zīrid, 202
- al-Hasan b. ‘Alī b. Abī Tālib, imam, 48–49, 52, 58, 81, 83, 86, 90, 91, 94
transmitted *naṣṣ*, 81
in early Ismā‘īlī enumeration of imams, 97
- al-Hasan b. ‘Alī b. al-Hasan b. ‘Alī b. Muḥammad b. al-Ḥanafīyya, ‘Alid, 61
- al-Hasan b. ‘Alī b. Muḥammad b. al-Ḥanafīyya, ‘Alid, 61
- al-Hasan b. ‘Alī al-Kalbī, governor of Sicily, 144
- al-Hasan b. ‘Alī al-Utrūsh, al-Nāṣir li'l-Haqq, Zaydī imam in Daylam, 153, 314
- al-Hasan b. ‘Ammār, Kutāma chief and Fātimid *wāsiṭa*, 178–179
- al-Hasan b. Idris b. al-Hasan b. al-Walīd, Tayyibī dā‘ī *muṭlaq*, 268, 279
- al-Hasan b. Ismā‘īl Āl Shibām al-Makramī, Sulaymānī dā‘ī, 297
- al-Hasan b. Jannūn, Idrīsid, 156
- Hasan b. Manṣūr al-Yaman, 166
- Hasan b. Nāmāwar, brother-in-law and murderer of Hasan II ‘alā dhikrihi’l-salām, 363
- al-Hasan b. al-Qāsim, al-Dā‘ī al-Ṣaghīr, Zaydī imam in Daylam, 112
- al-Hasanb.al-Ṣabbāḥ, *see* Hasan-i Ṣabbāḥ
- Hasan b. Ṣalāḥ Munshī Bīrjandī, *ra’is*, Nizārī historian, 355–356
- al-Hasan b. Sanbar, Qarmaṭī dignitary in Bahrayn, 110, 151, 210

- al-Hasan b. ‘Ubayd Allāh b. Ṭughj, Ikhshidid governor of Syria, 161–162
- al-Hasan b. Zayd, al-Dā‘ī al-Kabīr, founder of an ‘Alid Zaydī dynasty in Tabaristān, 153
- Hasan Daryā, Hasan Kabīr al-Dīn’s shrine, 444
- Hasan Kabīr al-Dīn, *pīr*, 443–445 *passim*, 446, 447
- Hasan Nūrānī, leader of Mahdībāghwālās, 288
- Hasan Pīr, son of Sayyid Fāḍil Shāh, 448
- Hasanābād, in Mazagaon, Bombay, mausoleum of Āghā Khān I, 476, 480
- Hasanak, Ghaznawid vizier, 200
- Hasan-i Māzandarānī 392
- Hasan-i Ṣabbāh, Nizārī leader and founder of Nizārī state, 3, 9, 21, 243, 245, 301, 302, 332, 345, 355, 357, 358, 368, 395, 397, 402 writings, 305 biographies of, 305, 307, 311–312 early career, 202, 206, 311–316 established at Alamūt, 318–319, 324 as head of the Nizārī *da‘wa* and state, 301–302, 326, 332, 337 recognized as *ḥujja* of the imam, 301, 326, 342, 344, 359, 360, 364, 382 and doctrine of *ta‘līm*, 339–342, 364 in Nizārī doctrine of the *qiyyāma*, 359–360, 362 and Nizārī–Musta‘li schism, 242–243
- Hasan-i Ṣalāḥ Munshī, *see* Ṣalāḥ al-Dīn Hasan-i Maḥmūd
- Hasanids, branch of ‘Alids, 57, 68, 75, 79, 80
- Hāṣbayyā, in Syria, 348
- Hāshim, Banū, *see* Hāshimids
- Hāshimids, the Prophet’s clan of the Quraysh, 37, 41, 43, 57–58, 64, 71, 74, 79
- Hāshimiyya, ‘Abbāsid capital in ‘Irāq, 78
- Hāshimiyya, early Shi‘ī group, 61–62, 67, 76
- hashīsh*, 13, 23, 24, 328–329
- hashīshīs*, *hashīshīyya*, 10, 11, 23–24, 116
- Hassān b. Jarrāḥ, Jarrāhid, 163, 195
- Hassān b. Mufarrij b. Daghfal, Jarrāhid, 182, 192
- Hātim, Banū, of Yaman, 259
- Hātim b. Ahmad b. ‘Imrān, Ḥamīd al-Dawla, Hamdānid ruler of Ṣan‘ā’, 259, 265
- Hātim b. al-Ghashīm al-Mughallasī, Hamdānid, 258
- Hātim b. Ḥimās b. al-Qubayb, Hamdānid, 258–259
- Hātim b. Ibrāhīm, *see* al-Hāmidī, Hātim b. Ibrāhīm
- Hātim b. Saba’ b. al-Ya‘burī, 266
- Hawdigān range, in the central Alburz mountains, 318
- Hawrān, in Syria, 189
- Hawzan, in Yāman, 298
- Haydar, Ṣafawid *shaykh*, 430
- Haydar Āmulī, Bahā’ al-Dīn, Twelver scholar, 420
- Haydar b. Muḥammad al-Mutahhar, Muḥammad-Shāhī Nizārī imam, 455
- Haydar b. Shāh Tāhir, Muḥammad-Shāhī Nizārī imam, 454–455
- Haydara, son of the Fāṭimid caliph al-Ḥāfiẓ, 249
- Haydarābād, in Gujarāt, 30, 298, 470
- Hayfā, in Palestine, 243
- haykal nūrānī* (temple of light), 274–275
- al-Haytham, early Ismā‘īlī *dā‘ī* in Sind, 110
- hayūlā* (matter), in Ismā‘īlī cosmology, 229, 234, 271
- Hayyān al-Sarrāj, 60
- Hazārasf b. Fakhr al-Dawla Namāwar, Bādūspānid, 344
- Hazārasf b. Shahrnūsh b. Hazārasf, Bādūspānid, 344, 367
- Hazāraspids, of Daylam, 416–417
- Hazārmard, Hizabr al-Mulūk, Fāṭimid vizier, 246
- Hebrew language, 184, 233
- Hell, 134 denied by *ghulāt*, 65 in doctrine of Abū Manṣūr, 70 in Nizārī doctrine, 360, 413 in Nuqtawī doctrine, 422 in Ṭayyibī doctrine, 275

Index

723

- Hellenistic wisdom, *see* Greek philosophy
- Henry III, king of England, 388
- Henry III, king of France, 20
- Henry IV, king of France, 20
- Henry of Champagne, ruler of the Latin state of Jerusalem, 13
- d'Herbelot, Barthélémy, early orientalist, 21
- hermeneutics, *see* *ta'wīl*
- Het'um, king of Little Armenia, 399
- Hibat Allāh b. Ibrāhīm al-Makramī, Sulaymānī dā'i, 296
- Hibat Allāh b. Ismā'il b. 'Abd al-Rasūl al-Majdū', founder of Hiptias, 285–286
- Hibat Allāh al-Mu'ayyad fi'l-Dīn, Dā'ūdī dā'i, 285
- al-Hidāya al-Āmiriyah*, of the Fātimid caliph al-Āmir, 245–246, 325, 326, 343
- Hidāyat, Rīdā Quli Khān, historian, 408
- hidden imams (*al-a'imma al-mastūrīn*) for pre-Fātimid Ismā'ilis, 99, 100, 104, 112
in Druze literature, 105
in ancestry of 'Abd Allāh al-Mahdī, 105–106, 107; pseudonyms, 104, 118
for Nizāris, 325–326, 344, 456
for Ṭāyyibīs, 238–239, 285, 288, 292
see also dawr al-star
- hierarchy in *da'wa* organization: early Ismā'ilī, 117–118, 130, 134; Fātimid, 217–219; Druze, 190
spiritual, 85–86, 134–135; analogous with terrestrial, 230–234 *passim*
see also hūdūd
- High Court, of Bombay, *see* Bombay High Court
- Hijāz, the, 51, 52, 73, 80, 89, 95, 103, 206, 287, 468
part of Fātimid empire, 139, 161, 176, 198
in rebellion of Mufarrij, 182
under Sa'ūdīs, 296–297
- hijra* (emigration), of the Prophet, 36
- hikma*, 214, 215, 379
al-hikma al-ilāhiyya, 420–421
- Hilāl, Banū, 201
- Hilālī invasion, of North Africa, 201–202
- Hilla, in 'Irāq, 185
- Himās b. al-Qubayb, Hamdānid, 258
- Ḥimṣ (Homs), in Syria, 123, 175, 333, 347, 369, 400, 489
- Himyar, Banū, of Yaman, 199, 265
- Hind, 218, 266, 298, 438
see also India; Indian subcontinent; South Asia
- Hindu Kush, mountains, in Central Asia, 207, 452, 494
- Hindus, Hinduism, 4, 276, 277, 282, 286, 288, 294, 295, 299, 385–386, 404, 444, 446, 447–450, 475–476, 504
- Hindustani language, 444
- Hiptias (Hibtiyas), subgroup of Dā'ūdī Bohras, 285–286
- al-Hīra, near Kūfa, 92
- Hishām II, Umayyad caliph in Spain, 158
- Hishām b. 'Abd al-Malik, Umayyad caliph, 71, 72, 73, 74
- Hishām b. al-Hakam, Imāmī scholar, 81, 84, 89
- Hishām b. al-Qubayb, Hamdānid, 258
- Hishām b. Sālim al-Jawāliqī, Imāmī scholar, 84
- Hiṣn al-Akrād, *see* Krak des Chevaliers
- Hiṣn al-Khaḍrā', fortress, in 'Adan, 255
- Hiṣn al-Ta'kar, fortress, near Dhū Jibla, 255
- historiography of Ismā'ilis, 2, 4–10, 99; problems of, 87
of Nizāris, 6–10, 304–309, 405–409
of Fātimids, 139–140
of Mustālians, 239–241
of Ṭāyyibīs, 240–241
see also archaeological evidence; literature; numismatic evidence
- Hodgson, Marshall Goodwin S., 24, 32, 310
on Nizāris, 338, 355, 361, 397
on authority of imam, 81–82
on *tarīqa Shī'ism*, 426
- Holy Land, 11, 14, 18, 20, 352, 372, 390

Holy Sepulchre, church of the, in Jerusalem, 180–181, 182, 192, 197
 horse racing, 476, 483
 Hospitallers, *see* Knights Hospitaller
 housing, 488, 503
 Huart, Clément, orientalist, 30
hudūd, hudūd al-dīn, 118, 126, 130, 164, 213–214, 217, 219, 231, 234, 275
 in Druze terminology, 190
 in Dā’ūdī *da’wa*, 292
 celestial, in Ṭayyibī doctrine, 270–274
 Hugh of Caesarea, Frankish envoy to Fātimid Egypt, 251
ḥujja (proof), 127, 165, 263, 288
 in Imāmī doctrine, 83, 364
 in early Ismā’īlī doctrine, 117–118
 as rank in Ismā’īlī *da’wa* organization, 118, 200, 206, 208, 218, 220, 234, 264, 275
 as guardian of imam, 106, 414
 in Nizārī doctrine, 3, 301, 342, 359, 360–361, 364, 365, 382; for Qāsim-Shāhīs, 439–440, 442; Hasan-i Ṣabbāh as, 326, 342, 344, 359–364 *passim*, 382
 in works of Khayrkhwāh-i Harātī, 433, 434, 441, 491
 Murād Mīrzā as, 491
al-hujja al-laylī, 285
ḥujjat-i a’zam, 439
 Hujr b. ‘Adī al-Kindī, 45, 49
 Hujūmiyya, subgroup of Dā’ūdī Bohras, 284, 285
 Hülegü (Hūlāgū), founder of the Ilkhānid dynasty of Persia and ‘Irāq, 13, 18, 304–305, 306, 379, 388–398 *passim*, 411
ḥulūl (incarnation), 64, 65, 67, 189
 al-Hulwānī, dā’ī, 126
 Ḥumayma, in Palestine, 61, 76, 77
 Hunza, in northern Pakistan, 207, 433, 491, 495–496
 al-Hurr al-‘Āmilī, Muḥammad b.
 al-Ḥasan, Twelver scholar, 168
hurūf (letters of the alphabet): symbolic nature of, 69, 134, 421–422
al-hurūf al-‘ulwiyya (higher letters), in Ismā’īlī cosmology, 134, 230, 234

Ḥurūfiyya, 421–422, 426
 Ḥusām al-Dawla Ardashīr, Bāwandīd, 367, 374
 Ḥusām al-Dawla Shahriyār b. Qārin, Bāwandīd, 337
 Ḥusām al-Dīn b. Dumlāj, Nizārī commander in Aleppo, 335
 Ḥusām al-Dīn al-Ḥajj Ghulām Ḥusayn, Sulaymānī dā’ī, 297
 Ḥusayn, Muḥammad Kāmil, 31
 Ḥusayn, son of Ḥasan-i Ṣabbāh, 344
 al-Ḥusayn, son of Zikrawayh b. Mihrawayh, 122–123
 al-Ḥusayn al-Ahwāzī, early Ismā’īlī dā’ī, 102, 107
 al-Ḥusayn b. Ahmad b. ‘Abd Allāh, concealed Ismā’īlī imam, 100, 106–107
 al-Ḥusayn b. ‘Alī, Ṣāḥib Fakhkh, ‘Alid leader of anti-‘Abbāsid revolt, 89
 al-Ḥusayn b. ‘Alī b. Abī Ṭālib, imam, 49–50, 51, 52, 57, 58, 73, 83, 90, 94, 109
 transmitted *naṣṣ*, 81, 83
 in early Ismā’īlī enumeration of imams, 97
 commemorated on ‘Āshūrā’, 177, 294, 492; by Dā’ūdīs, 284, 294
 shrine of, 109, 455
 al-Ḥusayn b. ‘Alī b. Muḥammad b. al-Walīd, Ṭayyibī dā’ī *muṭlaq*, 267
 al-Ḥusayn b. ‘Alī b. al-Nu‘mān, Abū ‘Abd Allāh, Fātimid chief *qādī*, grandson of al-Qādī al-Nu‘mān, 172, 181
 al-Ḥusayn b. ‘Alī al-Marwazī, Ismā’īlī dā’ī, 111, 113, 116, 122
 al-Ḥusayn b. Idrīs b. al-Ḥasan b. al-Walīd, Ṭayyibī dā’ī *muṭlaq*, 269
 al-Ḥusayn b. Jawhar, Fātimid *wāsīta*, 180, 181
 Ḥusayn b. Ya‘qūb Shāh Qā’inī, Nizārī poet, 491
 al-Ḥusayn b. Zāhir al-Wazzān, 181
 Ḥusayn İsfahānī, Ṣafawid official, 453
 Ḥusayn Qā’inī, Nizārī dā’ī, 314, 318–319, 344
 Ḥusayn Yazdī, Mullā, 463
 Ḥusaynī Sādāt Amīr, Sufi master, 419, 428

Index

725

- Ḥusaynids, branch of ‘Alids, 57–58, 69, 71, 75, 81, 83, 84, 431, 452
 Husseini, Prince, son of Aga Khan IV, 504
 Ḥuṭayb, fortress, in Ḥarāz, 266
 Hyde, Thomas, 21
 Hyderabad, *see* Haydarābād
- Iamblichus, philosopher, 224
 ‘ibādāt, 169
 see further *ḥajj*; *ṣalāt*; *ṣawm*; etc.
 Ibādiyya, subgroup of Khārijīs, 141, 145
 ibāha (antinomianism), 66, 102, 130, 154, 225, 226, 372
 see also libertinism
 ibdā‘ (creation *ex nihilo*), 229, 233, 269, 274
 Iblīs, 271–272
 Ibn ‘Abd al-Qawī, Fātimid chief *dā‘ī*, 253
 Ibn ‘Abd al-Ẓāhir, biographer of Baybars I, 399
 Ibn Abī Khinzīr, Fātimid *amīr* of Sicily, 143
 Ibn Abī Tayyi‘, historian, 261
 Ibn Abīl-Baghl, 235
 Ibn Abīl-Fawāris, Fātimid *amīr* of Sicily, 143
 Ibn al-‘Adīm, Kamāl al-Dīn, historian, 6, 309, 334, 372
 Ibn ‘Ammār, Fātimid *qādī* of Alexandria, 242
 Ibn ‘Ammār al-Kutāmī, *see* al-Hasan b. ‘Ammār
 Ibn Anaz, *see* Muḥammad b. Anaz
 Ibn al-‘Arabī, Sufi master, 420
 Ibn al-Ash‘ath, leader of revolt, 56
 Ibn al-Ashtar, *see* Ibrāhīm b. al-Ashtar
 Ibn al-Athīr, ‘Izz al-Dīn, historian, 6, 139, 308, 309, 313, 330, 362, 372–373
 Ibn ‘Atṭāsh, *see* ‘Abd al-Malik b. ‘Atṭāsh
 Ibn Bābawayh, Imāmī scholar, 168, 170
 Ibn Badī‘, *see* Ṣā‘id b. Badī‘
 Ibn al-Balkhī, historian and geographer, 337
 Ibn Battūṭa, Moorish traveller, 402
 Ibn al-Dawādārī, Abū Bakr b. ‘Abd Allāh, historian, 8, 101
 Ibn Dawwās, Kutāma chief, 191
 Ibn Dayṣān (Bardesanes), 102, 227
 Ibn al-Faḍl, *dā‘ī*, *see* ‘Alī b. al-Faḍl
 Ibn al-Furāt, ‘Abbāsid vizier, 148
 Ibn al-Hanafiyā, *see* Muḥammad b. al-Hanafiyā
 Ibn Hāni‘, Ismā‘īlī poet, 30, 159–160
 Ibn al-Ḥarb, *see* ‘Abd Allāh b. al-Ḥarb
 Ibn Hawqal, Abu'l-Qāsim, geographer and traveller, 111, 120, 121, 154, 218
 Ibn Hawshab, Manṣūr al-Yaman, early Ismā‘īlī *dā‘ī* and author in Yaman, 6, 109–110, 122, 125, 126, 166, 198
 Ibn Hazm, ‘Alī b. Ahmad, Sunnī heresiographer, 59
 Ibn Hubayra, Umayyad governor of ‘Irāq, 77
 Ibn Isfandiyār, Muḥammad b. al-Ḥasan, historian, 308
 Ibn al-Jawzī, Sibṭ, *see* Sibṭ Ibn al-Jawzī
 Ibn Jubayr, Andalusian traveller, 370
 Ibn Khaldūn, ‘Abd al-Rahmān, historian, 157
 Ibn Khallikān, Aḥmad b. Muḥammad, biographer, 168
 Ibn al-Khashshāb, *qādī*, 347
 Ibn Killis, Fātimid vizier, 158, 163, 175, 176–177, 212, 214–215
 Ibn al-Kurdī, Druze leader, 188
 Ibn Madyan, *dā‘ī*, 261–262
 Ibn al-Maghribī, Fātimid vizier, 196–197
 Ibn Mālik al-Hammādī al-Yamānī, Muḥammad, Yamanī historian and jurist, 120
 Ibn al-Ma’mūn al-Baṭā’ihī, Jamāl al-Dīn, historian, 245
 Ibn Maṣāl, Fātimid vizier, 249, 250
 Ibn Mu‘āwiya, *see* ‘Abd Allāh b. Mu‘āwiya
 Ibn Mudabbir, Fātimid vizier, 204
 Ibn al-Muslima, Abu'l-Qāsim ‘Alī, ‘Abbāsid vizier, 196, 204
 Ibn Muyassar, Muḥammad b. ‘Alī, historian, 245, 246, 261, 343, 399
 Ibn al-Nadīm, Muḥammad b. Ishāq, author, 8, 9, 101, 102, 107, 155
 Ibn Nafis, *dā‘ī*, 155
 Ibn Najīb al-Dawla, Fātimid envoy to Yaman, 263–264

- Ibn al-Nu‘mān, Fātimid chief *qādī*, *see* ‘Alī b. al-Nu‘mān
- Ibn al-Qaddāh, *see* ‘Abd Allāh b. Maymūn al-Qaddāh
- Ibn al-Qalānisi, Ḥamza b. Asad, historian, 6, 309, 332, 347, 349
- Ibn al-Qiftī, Jamāl al-Dīn, Arab author, 235
- Ibn Qurhub, governor of Sicily, 143–144
- Ibn Raslān, *dā‘ī*, 261
- Ibn al-Rāwandī, Abu’l-Husayn Aḥmad, Mu‘tazilī scholar, 204
- Ibn Rizām (Razzām), Abū ‘Abd Allāh Muḥammad, anti-Ismā‘īlī author, 8, 99, 101, 103, 105, 107, 111, 117, 152
- alleged Qaddāhid foundation of Ismā‘īlism, 102
- myth of Ibn al-Qaddāh, 104, 105
- on initiation into Ismā‘īlism, 129–130, 220–221
- on schism in the Ismā‘īlī movement, 99, 117
- preserved in later works, 8, 101
- Ibn Ruzzik, *see* Ṭalā‘ī b. Ruzzik
- Ibn Saba’, *see* ‘Abd Allāh b. Saba’
- Ibn Sa‘dān, Būyid vizier, 235
- Ibn Ṣalāḥ, Zangid governor of Ḥamā, 350
- Ibn Sanbar, *see* al-Ḥasan b. Sanbar
- Ibn Sa‘ūd, *see* ‘Abd al-‘Azīz II
- Ibn Sawāda, *dā‘ī* al-Nasafī’s deputy, 113
- Ibn al-Ṣayrafi, ‘Alī b. Munjib, secretary in Fātimid chancery, 245, 343
- Ibn Shaddād, Bahā’al-Dīn Yūsuf, biographer of Saladin, 309
- Ibn Shahrāshūb, Muḥammad b. ‘Alī, Imāmī scholar, 68, 168
- Ibn Sīnā (Avicenna), 202, 224, 233, 340, 380
- Ibn Taghrībirdī, Abu’l-Mahāsin Yūsuf, historian, 140
- Ibn Ṭughj, *see* Muḥammad b. Ṭughj
- Ibn ‘Uqayl, Fātimid chief *qādī*, 245
- Ibn Wāṣil, Abū ‘Abd Allāh Jamāl al-Dīn, historian, 309
- Ibn Ziyād, *see* ‘Ubayd Allāh b. Ziyād
- Ibn al-Zubayr, *see* ‘Abd Allāh b. al-Zubayr
- Ibrāhīm (Abraham), 94, 97, 98, 131, 208, 227, 365
- Ibrāhīm al-‘Ajamī, Nizārī commandant of Bālis, 335
- Ibrāhīm b. ‘Abd Allāh b. al-Ḥasan, ‘Alid, brother of al-Nafs al-Zakiyya, 75, 80
- Ibrāhīm b. Abī Salama, 267
- Ibrāhīm b. al-Ashtar, 52
- Ibrāhīm b. Dā‘ūd b. ‘Ajabshāh, 281
- Ibrāhīm b. al-Ḥusayn b. ‘Alī b. al-Walīd, Tayyibī *dā‘ī muṭlaq*, 268
- Ibrāhīm b. Muḥammad b. ‘Alī (Ibrāhīm al-Imām), ‘Abbāsid, 61, 75, 76–77
- Ibrāhīm b. Muḥammad b. al-Fahd al-Makramī, Sulaymānī *dā‘ī*, 296
- Ibrāhīm b. al-Walid I, Umayyad caliph, 74, 75
- Ibrāhīm al-Imām, *see* Ibrāhīm b. Muḥammad b. ‘Alī
- Ibrāhīm İnal, Saljūq *amīr*, 196
- Ibrāhīm Pasha, Ottoman general, 489
- Ibrāhīm Riḍā Ṣāhib, leader of Mahdībāghwālās, 288
- Ibrāhīm Wajīh al-Dīn, Dā‘ūdī *dā‘ī*, 285
- Ibrāhīmbahā‘ī Ṣafī al-Dīn b. ‘Abd-i ‘Alī ‘Imād al-Dīn, Dā‘ūdī scholar, 287
- ‘id al-naṣr*, 247
- ‘id-i qiyāmat*, 359
- Idrīs ‘Imād al-Dīn b. al-Ḥasan, Tayyibī *dā‘ī mutlaq* and historian, 5, 240, 268, 269, 283
- on Imam Muḥammad b. Ismā‘īl, 95
- on ‘hidden imams’, 99, 106
- on Ja‘far b. Manṣūr al-Yaman, 166
- on the *Epistles*, 235
- on al-Qādī al-Nu‘mān, 169, 172
- on al-Āmir, 246
- on al-Tayyib, 261, 262
- on Ḥāfiẓī Ismā‘īlīs of Yaman, 265
- see also ‘Uyūn al-akhbār; Zahr al-ma‘āni
- Idrīsids, of Morocco, 142, 156
- Īfrān, Banū, branch of the Zanāta, 145, 156, 157
- Ifrīqiya, 125–136, 327
- as seat of Fātimid caliphate 142, 146–162 *passim*, 170, 212
- relations with Sicily, 143–144
- under Zīrids, 157, 162, 180, 201
- Ismā‘īlīs persecuted, 182–183
- Iftitāḥ al-da‘wa*, of al-Qādī al-Nu‘mān, 56

- Ighlamish, Eldigüzid governor of ‘Irāq-i ‘Ajam, 377
 ‘Ijl, Banū, 69, 149
ijtihād, 171
ijmā‘ (consensus), 39, 171
 al-Ikhshīd, ruler of Egypt, 143, 158
 Ikhshīdids, of Egypt and southern Syria, 143, 158, 161, 162
 Ikhwān al-Ṣafā‘ (Brethren of Purity), 28, 32, 234–236
 see also *Rasā‘il Ikhwān al-Ṣafā‘*
 Īkjān, in North Africa, 126
 Īlghāzī, Artuqid ruler, 243, 347
 Ilkhānid, Mongol dynasty of Persia and ‘Irāq, 6, 304, 307, 379, 398, 411, 415, 416, 425, 430,
ilm (religious knowledge), 40, 41, 73, 82, 83, 88, 213, 271, 292, 340
 see also imamate: principle of *ilm*
ilm al-bātin, 222
ilm al-fiqh, see *fiqh*
ilm al-zāhir, 222
 ‘Imād al-Dīn, Nizārī vizier to ‘Alā’ al-Dīn Muḥammad III, 387
 ‘Imād al-Dīn Muḥammad al-Kātib al-Isfahānī, historian, 308
 imam, 7, 39–40
 mustaqarr, *mustawda‘*, 97, 106, 107
 in religious hierarchy, 117–118, 231, 234
 absent during *dawr al-fatra*, 226–227
 none after the *qā‘im*, 96–97, 132
 for Fātimids, 207–209; *see further*
 imamate: in Fātimid doctrine
 in Tayyibī cosmology, 272, 273–275
 in *Pandiyāt* of Mustansir bi’llāh II, 432–433
 as tenth *avatāra* of Vishnu, 450
 for Nizāris: spiritual reality, 360–361, 371, 381–382; succession, post-Alamūt, 413–415, 417–418, 423; authority, 413, 500–501; in Qāsim-Shāhī teaching, 440–441
 see also hidden imams; imamate
 Imām al-Dīn ‘Abd al-Rahīm b. Ḥasan, *see* Imām Shāh
 Imām Shāh, Imām al-Dīn ‘Abd al-Rahīm, eponym of Imām-Shāhīs, 445–446, 450
 imamate, 40–41
 in Imāmī doctrine, 81, 83
 in teachings of Ja‘far al-Ṣādiq, 81–83
 in early Ismā‘īlī doctrine, 129–133; enumeration, 96–98
 in Qarmaṭī doctrine, 96–97, 102–103
 in account of Akhū Muḥsin, 101–102
 in Zaydī doctrine, 73
 in Shī‘ī thought, 39–41, 83–84
 for *ghulāt*, 64–65
 succession for Mubārakiyya, 90
 for Mu‘tazilīs, 73
 in Fātimid doctrine, 117, 120, 170; reform of ‘Abd Allāh al-Mahdī, 116–119, 132; reform of al-Mu‘izz, 164–166; during caliphate of the Fātimid al-Mustansir, 207–209
 in Druze doctrine, 186, 189–190
 in writings of Nāṣir-i Khusraw, 208–209; of al-Sijistānī, 227–228
 in Nizārī doctrine, 339–342, 361–365; in *gināns*, 450
 in Satpanth Ismā‘īlism, 448–450
 claimed by Nar (Nūr) Muḥammad, 445–446
 divinity of, 64, 65, 186–187
 principle of *ilm*, 82
 principle of *nāṣ*, 61, 64, 81–82
 cycles of, 131–132
 in Shī‘ī schools of *fiqh*, 170–171
 transferability between brothers, 90, 172–173
 see also imam
 Imāmīs, Imāmiyya, 1, 35, 58–59, 88–89, 353, 410
 and the *ghulāt*, 63, 67, 71
 and the Mu‘tazilīs, 73
 under Zayn al-‘Ābidīn, 59, 67–68
 supported Ja‘far al-Ṣādiq, 71
 appeal of revolutionary Ismā‘īlism of 260s/870s, for, 108
 and Zaydīsm, 72, 73–74
 recognized Mūsā al-Kāzīm, 88–89
 their use of the term *hujja*, 83, 118
 school of law, 170–171, 172
 in Syria, 332
 see also Twelvers
imām-qā‘im, 272, 361, 364–365, 381
 Imām-Shāhīs, 442, 444, 445–447, 450

- Īmānī Khān Farāhānī, 464
 Imperial Library, Vienna, 25
 'Imrān b. al-Fadl, al-Qādī, governor of
 Ṣan‘ā', 258–259
 'Imrān b. Muḥammad b. Saba', Zuray‘id, 257
inbi‘āth (emanation), 228–231, 234
 incarnation, see *ḥulūl*
 India, 3, 4, 20, 30, 138, 256, 260, 374, 436, 440
 Fātimid influence in, 166; *da‘wa*, 200, 203
jazīra, 218, 298
 in Nizārī–Musta‘lī schism, 324–325
 Muslims of, 453–454, 482
 Nizārīs of, 304, 385–386, 405–406, 409, 432, 438, 465, 481, 488, 497;
 historiography and literature, 406, 407, 409, 414; post-Alamūt period, 442–451, 456; modern period, 472–484; organization, 484, 499–500, 501, 503;
 Muḥammad-Shāhīs, 414, 451, 454–456; *see further*
 Muḥammad-Shāhīs; seat of Āghā
 Khāns (Aga Khans), 473–481; *see
 further* Imām-Shāhīs; Khojas;
 Satpanth Ismā‘īlism
 Tayyibīs (Bohras) of, 201, 239, 267, 268, 276, 280–281
 Dā‘ūdīs of, 281–295; *see further* Dā‘ūdīs
 Sulaymānīs of, 295, 298–299; *see further*
 Sulaymānīs
 Nuqṭawīs of, 422
 Ni‘mat Allāhīs of, 427, 428, 461, 468
 and East Africa, 485–486
 and Yaman, 240
 British, 286, 288, 481, 482, 484, 491;
 interest in Āghā Khān I's rebellion, 469
 independence, 482–483, and partition, 484
see also Indian subcontinent; South Asia
 Indian hemp, see *ḥashīsh*
 Indian subcontinent, 4, 110
 Fātimid *da‘wa* to, 200–201
 Nizārī *da‘wa* to, 385–386, 438, 442–445
see also India; Pakistan; South Asia
- Indic (Indian) languages, 1, 406, 409
 Indus valley, 54, 200, 386
 inheritance, 171, 474–475, 486
 initiation, see *balāgh*
al-insān al-kāmil ('perfect man' of the
 Sufis), 366
 Institute for the Study of Muslim
 Civilisations, London, 503
 Institute of Ismaili Studies, London, 33, 242, 408, 501, 503
 intellect, see 'aql
 'Iqdāniyya, council of, 110–111, 151
iqtā‘, 317, 318, 327, 353, 386
irāda (divine intention), 134
 Iran, Iranians, 223–234 *passim*, 410, 420, 501
see further Persia
 Iranian school of philosophical
 Ismā‘īlism, *see* philosophical
 Ismā‘īlism
 Irano-Zoroastrianism: and *mawālī*, 56
 Īrānshāh b. 'Alā' al-Dīn Muḥammad
 III, 395
 'Irāq, 42, 95, 206, 327, 346, 435, 453, 462, 463, 468
 versus Syria, 45, 49, 76, 77–78, 80
 in the first civil war, 47, 48
 under Umayyads, 51, 53–54, 71, 76–77
 Qarmatī revolts of, 289–294/902–907, 122–123
 policy of the Fātimid caliph al-‘Azīz
 towards, 176
 attacked by Abū Tāhir al-Jannābī,
 148–149
 conquered by Saljūqs, 195–196
 under Jalāyirids, 416
 in World War I, 491
 Āghā Khān II in, 477
 Ṣafi ‘Ali Shāh in, 479
 pro-Shī‘ī, 46, 48
mawālī of, 54, 58
 and later Kaysānī sects, 63
 seat of 'Abbāsid caliphate, 78
 early Ismā‘īlī *da‘wa* in, 102, 107, 116–117; *see further* Qarmatīs
 Fātimid *da‘wa* to, 184–185, 192, 218, 310, 311
 Nizārīs of, 342, 374

Index

729

- al-‘Irāq al-‘Ajamī, ‘Irāq-i ‘Ajam, 184, 377, 384, 394, 438
 ‘īrfān, *see gnosticism*
Irshād al-sālikīn, of Fidā’ī Khurāsānī, 407
Irshād al-tālibīn, of Muhibb ‘Alī Qunduzī, 414
 ‘Īsā (Jesus), 93, 94, 97, 98, 131, 208, 227, 365
 ‘Īsā b. Mūsā, ‘Abbāsid governor of Kūfa, 80, 85
 ‘Īsā b. Mūsā, nephew of ‘Abdān, Qarmatī dā’ī, 120, 124, 149, 150
 ‘Īsā b. Nastūrus, Fātimid vizier, 177, 179
 ‘Īsā b. Zayd b. ‘Alī, Zaydī imam, 73
 Isabella, wife of Conrad of Montferrat, 372
Isfahān, in central Persia, 150, 153, 327, 345, 377, 384, 418, 463
 extension of *da’wa* to: early Ismā’īlī, 112, 327; Fātimid, 202, 327
 Ḥasan-i Ṣabbāḥ in, 312, 313
 massacres of Nizārīs, 329, 330, 356
 Nizārīs active in, 329–330, 336, 339, 356
 Saljūq capital, 311, 321, 338
 Ṣafawid capital, 437
 Nuqṭawiyya of, 422
 seized by Qājārs, 460
 Isfandiyār b. Ādharbād, chief priest of the Zoroastrians, 150
 Isfandiyār Khān, Qājār commander, 469
 Ishāq b. Ja’far al-Ṣādiq, ‘Alid, 91
 Ishāq b. Ya’qūb, dā’ī in Gujarāt, 277
 Ishāq Khuttalānī, Sufi master, 427
 Ishbīliya, *see* Seville
 Ishkāshim, in Badakhshan, 29
 Ishmael, *see* Ismā’īl
 Iskandar, Banū, of Tabaristān, 417
 Islam, 1, 16, 155
 historiography, 34–35
 as theocracy, 36–37
 Shī‘ī perspective, 38–40
 civil wars: first, 45–46, 47; second, 50–52
 tenets shared by all Muslims, 492
 era of, would be ended by Mahdī, 96–98, 132
 era of, in philosophical Ismā’īlism of Iranian school, 231–232
 era of, extended in Fātimid doctrine, 132–133, 223
 converts (non-Arab), *see mawālī*
 non-Muslim subjects, *see dhimmīs*
 Islām Shāh, Nizārī imam, 418, 443, 446
 Islamic Research Association, Bombay, 31
 ‘iṣma (perfect immunity from error and sin), 40, 65, 83, 271, 284, 292
 Ismā’īl (Ishmael), 132
 Ismā’īl I, founder of the Ṣafawid dynasty of Persia, 429, 430–431, 435, 453
 Ismā’īl II, Ṣafawid shāh, 436
 Ismā’īl ‘Ādil Shāh, ‘Ādil-Shāhī ruler of Bijāpūr, 453
 Ismā’īl al-‘Ajamī, Nizārī leader in Syria, 348, 349
 Ismā’īl b. Hibat Allāh, Sulaymānī dā’ī, 296
 Ismā’īl b. Ja’far al-Ṣādiq, Ismā’īlī imam and eponym of Ismā’īliyya, 1, 27, 85, 88, 90–93, 95, 105–106
 as Ja’far al-Ṣādiq’s successor, 88, 89, 312
 position in series of imams, 90, 97, 101
 pseudonym, 104
 and Fātimid genealogy, 105–107, 118–119
 in *Umm al-kitāb*, 93
 in account of Akhū Muhsin, 102
 in writings of the Fātimid caliph al-Mu’izz, 165–166
 Ismā’īl b. Muḥammad, Nizārī *amīr* of Qadmūs, 489
 Ismā’īl b. Muḥammad b. Ismā’īl b. Ja’far, ‘Alid, 96
 Ismā’īl b. Muḥammad al-Tamīmī, Druze leader, 187, 190
 Ismā’īl Badr al-Dīn b. Mullā Rāj b. Ādām, Dā’ūdī dā’ī, 284
 Ismā’īl Badr al-Dīn b. Shaykh Ādām Ṣafī al-Dīn, Dā’ūdī dā’ī, 285
 Ismaili Associations, *see* Ismaili Tariqah and Religious Education Boards
 Ismā’īl Qazwīnī, Nizārī dā’ī, 314
 Ismā’īlī law, *see fiqh*
 Ismaili Society, Bombay, 31
 Ismaili studies, 30–33, 503
 Ismaili Tariqah and Religious Education Boards (ITREB), formerly Ismailia Associations, 499, 500, 501

- Ismā‘īlīs, Ismā‘īliyya, 1, 35, 104
 origin of name, 1, 2, 85, 88
 as a movement of social protest, 67,
 115, 310–311
 early (pre-Fātimid) doctrine, 96–98,
 129–136; enumeration of early
 imams, 96–97, 117–119
da‘wa, 97–98, 107–127; organization
 and hierarchy, 130–131, 219
see further Nizārīs; Muḥammad-Shāhīs;
 Qāsim-Shāhīs; Khojas; Satpanth
 Ismā‘īlism; *see further* Musta‘lians;
 Tayyibīs; Ḥāfiẓīs; Dā‘ūdīs
 Sulaymānīs; Bohras; ‘Alawīs,
see also Fātimids; Qarmaṭīs; Shī‘is
al-Ismā‘īliyya al-khāliṣa, early Ismā‘īlī
 group, 89–90
al-Ismā‘īliyya al-wāqifa, 90
isnād (chain of transmitters of *hadīth*), 80,
 170
 Israel, 189
 Isrāfil (Seraphiel), archangel, 134
 İştakhr, in Fārs, 75
 Istanbul, 25, 481
istidlāl, 171
istihsān, 171
isti‘rād, 146
istislāh, 171
Istitār al-imām, of al-Nīsābūrī, 5
 Italy, 18, 19, 28, 143–144
 Ithnā‘ashariyya, *see* Twelvers
 I‘tibār al-Salṭana, Mīrzā Ismā‘īl Khān,
 son of Sardār Abu’l-Ḥasan Khān, 472
 I‘timād al-Salṭana, Muḥammad Ḥasan
 Khān, historian, 408
 Ivanow W. (Vladimir Alekseevich
 Ivanov), 30, 310, 405
 identification of al-Mubārak, 90
 on *Umm al-kitāb*, 93
 on Ibn al-Qaddāh, 103, 106
 on Nāṣir-i Khusraw, 206
 on Anjudān, 423
 on Fidā‘ī Khurāsānī’s works, 407
 on Amrī Shīrāzī, 422
 on Khayrkhwāh-i Harātī, 433
 Ismā‘īlī bibliography of, 31, 407, 438
 ‘Izz al-Dawla Bakhtiyār, Būyid, 162
 ‘Izz al-Dīn al-‘Adīmī, Mamlūk *amīr*, 400
 ‘Izzat ‘Alī Shāh, Muḥammad ‘Alī, Ni‘mat
 Allāhī Sufī, maternal uncle of Āghā
 Khān I, 463
 Jabal ‘Āmil, in Lebanon, 435
 Jabal Ansāriyya, *see* Jabal Bahārā
 Jabal Bahārā, in Syria, 309, 332, 349, 350,
 352, 353, 367, 369, 370, 389, 391,
 401
 Jabal Maghārība, in Yaman, 298
 Jabal Maswar, in Yaman, 109
 Jabal Şa‘fān, in Yaman, 291
 Jabal al-Summāq, in Syria, 216, 333–334,
 335, 349, 372
 Jābir b. ‘Abd Allāh al-Anṣārī, 93
 Jābir b. Ḥayyān, 84–85
 Jābir al-Ju‘fī, 85, 93
jadd, 134–135, 190, 230–231
 Ja‘far, cousin of al-Ḥasan al-A‘ṣam, 173
 Ja‘far, Sayyid, dissident Bohra, 277–278,
 279, 284
 Ja‘far b. Abī Tālib, al-Tayyār, Tālibid, 57,
 62
 Ja‘far b. ‘Alī, chamberlain to ‘Abd Allāh
 al-Mahdī, 6, 123, 125
 Ja‘far b. ‘Alī b. Ḥamdūn, governor of the
 Zāb, 157
 Ja‘far b. Falāḥ, Fātimid general, 162
 Ja‘far b. Manṣūr al-Yaman, Ismā‘īlī
 author, 6, 98, 101, 129, 164, 165–166,
 207, 208, 217, 225, 309
 Ja‘far b. Muḥammad b. Ismā‘īl b. Ja‘far,
 ‘Alīd, 96
 Ja‘far b. Muḥammad al-Ṣādiq, *see* Ja‘far
 al-Ṣādiq, imam
 Ja‘far b. Sulaymān, Sulaymānī *dā‘ī*, 295
 Ja‘far al-Ju‘fī, *see* Jābir al-Ju‘fī
 Ja‘far Khān Zand, father of Lutf Alī
 Khān, 460
 Ja‘far al-Ṣādiq, imam, 1, 2, 36, 41, 58, 60,
 63, 69, 71, 77, 84–85, 95, 103, 118,
 119, 126
 and Abū Muslim al-Khurāsānī, 77
 and the *ghulāt*, 67, 71, 81, 85, 94
 his interpretation of the law, 69
hadīths of, in Ismā‘īlī law, 170
 his tradition, regarding the Mahdī, 119
 during revolt of Zayd b. ‘Alī, 73

- withheld approval from al-Nafs al-Zakiyya, 75
- refused Abū Salama's offer of caliphate, 77
- rallying point for Shī'is, 79–80, 84
- his religious thought, 80–83, 128
- his circle of associates, 80–81, 84–85
- his death and succession, 88–89, 101
- disapproved of his son Ismā'il's revolutionary activities, 91–92
- in early Ismā'ilī enumeration of imams, 97, 119
- and Fātimid genealogy, 101, 104, 107
- Ja'far al-Tayyār, *see* Ja'far b. Abī Ṭālib
- Ja'farī Bohras, 278, 280
- Ja'farids, branch of Ṭālibids, 62
- Ja'fariyya, Muḥammad-Shāhī Nizārīs in Syria, 455–456, 488–490
- Jafri, S. Husain M., 85
- Jahāngīr, Mughal emperor, 168, 281, 282
- Jahāngīr b. Muḥammad b. Jahāngīr, Iskandarid ruler of Kujūr, in Māzandarān, 417
- jāhil, juhhāl* (the ignorant), 190
- Jalāl b. Ḥasan, Ṭayyibī *dā'i* *muṭlaq*, 279–280
- Jalāl al-Dawla, Büyid, 192
- Jalāl al-Dīn Ḥasan III, Nizārī imam and lord of Alamūt, 302, 375–377, 378, 380–381, 383, 386, 387, 389–390
- Jalāl al-Dīn Khwārazmshāh, 376, 384, 386–388
- Jalāl al-Dīn Rūmī, Mawlānā, Sufi poet, 385, 413, 420
- Jalāl Shāh, son of Āghā Khān I, 473
- Jalam b. Shaybān, *see* Halām b. Shaybān
- Jalāyirids, of Ādharbayjān, Kurdistān and 'Irāq, 416, 425
- Jamā'a* (the Community), 48, 78–79, 82
- jamā'at*, 292, 474, 484–485, 493–494, 498, 500–501
- jamā'at al-mu'minīn* (community of believers), 48
- jamā'at-i kalān*, 278
- jamā'at-i khurd*, 278
- jamā'at-khāna* (assembly house), 294, 443, 474–475, 477, 486–487, 494, 496, 499
- al-Jamal (the Camel), battle of, 44–45, 49
- Jamāl al-Dīn Gilī, Sufi *shaykh* of Qazwīn, 388
- Jamāl al-Dīn Hasan b. Thābit, Nizārī leader in Syria, 399
- Jāmāsp, 150
- Jambet, Christian, 32
- James of Vitry, bishop of Acre and Crusader historian, 13–14
- Jāmi'a Sayfiyya, *see* Sayfi Dars
- Jāmi' al-tawārikh, of Rashīd al-Dīn, 306, 307, 380
- Jamnagar, in Gujarāt, 284, 285, 447
- Janad, in Yaman, 109, 198
- janāh, ajniḥa*, rank in *da'wa* hierarchy, 219, 231
- al-janāh al-ayman* (the right wing), 190
- al-janāh al-aysar* (the left wing), 190
- Janāh al-Dawla, ruler of Ḥimṣ, 333
- Janāhiyya, subgroup of Kaysāniyya, 63, 75
see also Ḥarbiyya
- janā'iz* (funeral rites), 169
- Jangī Shāh, Āqā, son of Āghā Khān I, 476, 480–481
- Jannāba (Gannāva), on the coast of Fārs, 109, 203
- al-Jannābī, Abū Sa'īd, founder of the Qarmaṭī state of Bahrayn, 108, 109, 110, 121, 147, 151, 161, 163, 210
- al-Jannābī, Abū Ṭāhir, Qarmaṭī ruler of Bahrayn, 9, 121, 124, 148–150, 152, 161, 163
- al-Jarjarā'ī, 'Alī b. Aḥmad, Fātimid vizier, 192, 193
- Jarrāḥids, of Palestine, 163, 175, 177, 182, 192
- Jārūdiyya, branch of Zaydīs, 74
- Jawdhar, Ustādh, Fātimid functionary, 6, 172, 173, 212
- Jawhab, fortress, in Ḥarāz, 266
- Jawhar, al-Šiqillī, Fātimid general and administrator, 156–157, 158–159, 161, 162, 172, 173, 212
- Jawhar b. 'Abd Allāh, Zuray'īd guardian, 257
- al-Jayhānī, Abū 'Alī Muḥammad, Sāmānid vizier, 113
- Jayns, community of Bohras, 290

- Jaysh b. Ṣamṣām, Kutāma chief, 179
jazīra, jazā’ir, 118, 217–218, 221, 226, 271, 275, 298, 440
- Jazr, in northern Syria, 325, 333, 335, 372
- Jerruck, in Sind, 470
- Jerusalem, 11, 15, 180, 197, 243
 Latin state of, 331, 348, 369, 372, 390
- Jesus, *see* ‘Īsā
- Jetpur, in Sind, 443
- Jews
 under Fātimids appointed to high office by al-‘Azīz, 177; persecuted by al-Hākim, 180–181
- Jhun, in Sind, 445
- Jibāl, region, in Persia, 99, 111–112, 115, 121, 155, 224, 311
- Jibrā’il (Gabriel), archangel, 134
- Jidda, in Saudi Arabia, 480–481
- jihād* (war), 169
- Jinnah, Muhammad Ali, 483
- Jīruft, in Kirmān, 184
- Jīza, in Egypt, 159
- jizya* (tribute, poll-tax), 56, 145
- John of Joinville, French historian and secretary to Louis IX, 14–15, 390–391
- Joshua, *see* Yūsha‘
- Judeo-Christian traditions, 130, 132–133, 134, 135, 184, 222, 233
 and *mawālī*, 56
 origin of Mahdī concept, 60
 of *ta’wīl*, 130
 of religious history, 131
 of cosmology, 134
 in *Epistles*, 237
- Judaism, 34, 56, 130, 143, 177
- Junayd, Ṣafawid *shaykh*, 430
- jurisprudence, *see* *fiqh*
- al-Jurjānī, Abu'l-Haytham, *see* Abu'l-Haytham
- Justān II b. Wahsūdān, Justānid, 153
- Justānids, of Daylam, 152–153
- Juwānī, ‘Aṭā’-Malik, historian and Mongol administrator, 6, 18, 25, 304–305, 306, 307, 309, 408, 410
 in negotiations between Mongols and Nizāris, 395
 on Nizāris: Hasan-i Ṣabbāḥ, 313; Hasan II’s Nizārid ancestry, 363; *qiyāma*,
- 361–362, 367; fortresses, 397–398; Alamūt, 396; Alamūt library, 342, 396
 on assault of Lamasar, 324
- Jūzjān, in Afghanistan, 73
- al-Jūzjānī, Minhāj al-Dīn ‘Uthmān b. Sirāj al-Dīn, *see* Minhāj-i Sirāj
- Kābul, in Afghanistan, 434, 456, 470
- Kabylia, in North Africa, 126
- Kadi, in Cutch, 447
- Kadiwala Sayyids, of Sind, 448
- Kadmus, *see* Qadmūs
- Kafarlāthā, in Syria, 334
- kāfir* (unbeliever), 83, 274–275
- Kāfūr, Ikhshidid ruler of Egypt, 143, 158
- Kahak, village near Mahallāt, in central Persia, 27, 405, 439, 456–458, 462, 463, 473
- Kahf, castle, in Syria, 13, 349, 350, 353, 367–368, 373, 389, 400, 401, 402
- kalām* (theology), 84, 225, 379
- Kalām fī maḥd al-khayr* (*Liber de causis*), pseudo-Aristotelian work, 224
- Kalām-i pīr*, of Khayrkhwāh-i Harātī, 433
- Kalāt, in Sind, 470
- Kalb, Banū, of Syria, 51, 122–123, 124, 192
- Kalbids, of Sicily, 144–145, 162, 202
- kalima* (divine word), 190, 229, 230, 364
- Kalwādhā, near Baghdad, 108
- Kāmaḍ, Hindu community, 450–451
- kamadīa*, (Nizārī Ismā‘īlī
 functionary), 474, 476, 501
 etymology, 443
- in Aga Khan Case, of 1866, 475–476
- in East Africa, 499; Zanzibar, 486, 499
- in South Asia, 474, 487, 500
- in Persia, 493
- in Nizārī Constitution of 1986, 501
- Kamāl al-Dīn al-Ḥasan b. Mas‘ūd, Nizārī chief *dā’ī* in Syria, 389
- Kamara, near Anjudān, 436
- al-Kāmil fi'l-ta'rikh*, of Ibn al-Athīr, 6
- Kampala, in Uganda, 486, 497
- Kanz al-Dawla, leader of pro-Fātimid revolt, 254
- Kapadwanj, in Gujarāt, 281
- Kār Kiyā’ī Sayyids, *see* Amīr Kiyā’ī Sayyids

Index

733

- Karachi, 290, 291, 293, 294, 470, 472, 477, 480, 484, 497, 500
 Karakorum (Qaraqorum), in Mongolia, 15, 397
 Karakorum mountains, 494
 Karbalā', in ‘Irāq, 50, 51, 58, 109, 294, 455, 479
 Karibiyya (or Kuraybiyya), subgroup of Kaysāniyya, 59–60
 Karīm al-Ḥusaynī, Aga Khan IV, *see* Aga Khan IV
 Karīm Khān Zand, founder of the Zand dynasty of Persia, 459, 460
 Karīmābād (Baltit), in Hunza, 495
 Kart dynasty, of eastern Khurāsān and northern Afghanistan, 393, 411
karūbiyyūn (Cherubim), 134, 135
 Kāshān, in central Persia, 111, 307, 422, 431, 435, 436, 453
 Kāshānī (al-Qāshānī), Abu'l-Qāsim 'Abd Allāh b. 'Alī, historian, 6, 307, 309, 360
kashf, *see* *dawr al-kashf*
Kashf al-ḥaqā'iq, of Fidā'i Khurāsānī, 407
 Kāshghar, in Sinkiang (Xinjiang) province of China, 494, 496
 Kashmir, 443
 al-Kashshī, Muḥammad b. 'Umar, Imāmī scholar, 68, 91, 168
 Kathiawar, in Gujarāt, 291, 448, 472, 485
 Kawkabān, fortress, near Ṣan'a', 259, 265, 268
kawr, *akwār* (aeons), 62, 132
al-kawr al-a'zam, 132, 272
 Kaykā'ūs b. Hazārasf, Bādūspānid, 344, 367
 Kaykā'ūs b. Shāhanshāh, ruler of Kūtum, 375
 Kayqubād Daylāmī, Ismā'iī commandant of Tahrīt, 321, 335
 Kaysān, Abū 'Amra, eponym of Kaysāniyya, 59
 Kaysāniyya, 35, 57, 59–62, 63, 79
 Kayūmarth b. Bisutūn, Gāwbāra ruler of Rustamdār, 417
 Kenya, 291, 484, 487, 497, 501
 Ket-Buqa, Mongol general, 391–395 *passim*, 399
 Khafif, Ḥabbārid ruler of Sind, 167
 Khākī Khurāsānī, Imām Qulī, Nizārī poet, 406, 407, 437–438, 492
 Khalaf b. Aḥmad, Ṣaffārid governor of Khurāsān, 155
 Khalaf b. Mula'ib, ruler of Afāmiya, 333
 Khalaf al-Hallāj, early Ismā'iī *dā'i* in Rayy, 111
 Khalafiyya, 111
 Khālid b. 'Abd Allāh al-Qasrī, Umayyad governor of 'Irāq, 71, 72
khalifa (successor), 36, 40
khalifa, *khulafā'* (lieutenants of the Mahdi; Sufi master, etc.)
 in Fāṭimid doctrine, 164–166, 208, 228, 247
 in doctrine of Iranian school of dissident Ismā'iīlism, 226–227
 in Nizārī doctrine, 359, 361, 495
 in Sufi doctrine, 427
khalfat rasūl Allāh, 36
 al-Khalil (Hebron), in Palestine, 250
 Khalil Allāh, son of Ni'mat Allāh Walī Kirmānī, 428, 429
 Khalil Allāh I (Dhu'l-Faqār 'Alī), Nizārī imam, 425, 437–438
 Khalil Allāh II, III, Nizārī imams, *see* Shāh Khalil Allāh II, III
 Khaljī dynasty, of India, 277
 Khalkhāl, in Ādharbayjān, 392
khālqān, 209
 Khāmbāyat (Khambhāt), *see* Cambay
 Khambhlia, in India, 284
khānaqāh, 412, 429
 Khāndesh, region in India, 447
 Khangai mountains, in Mongolia, 397
 Khānlanjān (Khālanjān), fortress, near İsfahān, 330, 336
kharāj (land tax), 55–56
 Kharība, castle, in Syria, 350, 400
 Khārijīs, Khawārij, 34, 56
 origin of the name, 45–46
 dissidents in first civil war, 45–46
 in North Africa, 125–126, 141, 163
 revolt of Khārijī Berbers in North Africa, 145–147
 used assassination, 146, 328
see also Ibādiyya; Nukkārīs

khāṣṣa (*khawāṣṣ*), 129, 215, 366
khātim al-anbiyā' ('seal of the prophets'), 36, 228
khatna (circumcision), 293
 al-Khaṭṭāb b. al-Hasan b. Abī'l-Hifāz al-Hamdānī, Ṭayyibī author, 105–106, 262, 264, 265
 Khaṭṭabiyya, extremist Shī‘ī group, 67, 85–86, 90, 92, 93, 94, 186, 189, 219
 Khawābī, castle, in Syria, 350, 368, 389, 400, 401
 Khawārij, see Khārijīs
khawāṣṣ, see *khāṣṣa*
 Khawla, mother of Muḥammad b. al-Ḥanafiyah, 52
khayāl, 134–135, 190, 230–231
 Khayrkhwāh-i Harātī, Muḥammad Riḍā b. Khwāja Sultān Ḥusayn, Nizārī *dā'ī* and author, 7, 406, 433–434, 436, 440–441, 445, 491
 Khayyām, ‘Umar, *see* ‘Umar Khayyām
 Khazars, 218
 al-Khazrajī, Abu'l-Hasan ‘Alī b. al-Hasan, Yamanī historian, 255
 Kheta, *mukhi*, 446
 Khidāsh ('Ammār b. Yazīd), 76
al-khidma, 212
 Khiḍr, 365
al-khiżāna al-maknūna, 241
 Khojas, Khojahs, 4, 28, 31, 32, 286, 404, 442–451, 457, 459, 463, 474–481 etymology, 443 in court cases, 474–476, 481, 484, 486, 488, 491 *gināns* of, 385, 409, 442–443, 448–451 histories of, 409, 442–444 preserved *Pandiyāt* of Mustaṇṣir bi'llāh II, 432–433 and Sufism, 444 *see also* East Africa: Nizārīs of; India: Nizārīs of; Pakistan: Nizārīs of Khojkī, script, 409, 432, 446, 447, 457 Khorog, capital of Tajik Badakhshan, 495, 503 *khudāwand*, lord of Alamūt, 302, 363 Khudāwand Muḥammad, Nizārī leader in Daylam, 415–417, 418, 451

Khudāybakhsh, Muḥammad-Shāhī Nizārī imam, *see* ‘Aṭīyyat Allāh b. Mu‘īn al-Dīn
al-khulafā' *al-rāshidūn* (the 'rightly-guided caliphs'), 37, 164, 208
khums, 108, 294
 Khurāsān, 61, 76, 89, 319, 321, 330, 340, 345, 346, 427, 430, 469 Marco Polo in, 17 tradition of Islamic philosophy, 224 Zaydīs in, 73 anti-Umayyad ('Abbāsid) revolt, 76–78, 219, 327 al-Nasafī in, 113 al-Sijistānī in, 166–167 and Nāsir-i Khusraw, 205, 206, 493 in Ismā‘īlī schism, 121 Ismā‘īlī *da‘wa* to, 99, 102, 111, 112–113, 116, 224, 311 dissident Ismā‘īlism in, 154–155 Fāṭimid *da‘wa* to, 202, 206 *jazīra* of, 218 Nizārīs of, 318, 342, 358, 397, 434, 452, 457, 465, 490–491, 493–494; *da‘wa*, 432, 439 occupied by Khwārazmshāhs, 373, 386 conquered by Mongols, 304, 376, 383, 392, 411 Khayrkhwāh-i Harātī in, 434 under Karts, 411 Khurāsānī tribesmen, 456, 461, 464, 468 Khurāsāniyya, army, 77, 78 Khurramdīniyya, Khurramiyya, 63, 79, 318 Khurshāh, Nizārī imam, *see* Rukn al-Dīn Khurshāh
 Khushk, village, in southern Khurāsān, 494 Khusraw Fīrūz, Büyid, *see* al-Malik al-Rāhīm Khusraw Fīrūz b. Wahsūdān, Justānid, 153 Khusraw Qazwīnī, *darwīsh*, Nuqṭawī leader, 422 *khuṭba*, 182 for Fāṭimid caliphs, 127, 128, 139, 159, 166–167, 176, 185, 196, 199, 204, 333 for 'Abbāsid caliphs, 194, 198, 201, 210, 252

- for Dā'ūdīs, 294
 at proclamation of *qiyāma* at Alamūt, and Mu'minābād, 358–359
- Khūzistān, region, in southwestern Persia, 96, 100, 103, 107, 196, 313, 321, 337
- Khwāf, in Khurāsān, 393
- Khwāja Jahān, Bahmanid vizier, 453
- Khwāja Qāsim, Nizārī dā'i, 434
- Khwāja Sultān Husayn, father of Khayrkhwāh-i Harātī, 434
- Khwānd Amīr, Ghiyāth al-Dīn b. Humām al-Dīn, historian, 308
- al-Khwānsārī, Muhammad Bāqir, Twelver scholar, 168
- Khwārazm, in Central Asia, 195, 373
- Khwārazmians, Khwārazmshāhs, 353, 373–374, 377, 382, 384, 386–388, 390, 411
- Khwurshāh, Nizārī imam, *see* Rukn al-Dīn Khurshāh
- Kilāb, Banū (Kilābīs), of Syria, 183, 192
- al-Kindī, Abū Yūsuf Ya'qūb b. Ishāq, philosopher, 224
- Kirmān, city and province, in Persia, 384, 387, 463, 472, 482
 home of dā'i al-Kirmānī, 184
- Ismā'ilī da'wa to, 311
- Hasan-i Ṣabbāh at, 313
- Nizārīs of, 321, 405, 408, 423, 438, 457, 459–462 *passim*, 490, 494; 'Atā' Allāhīs, 457, 460–469 *passim*, under Qājārs, 462
- Ni'mat Allāhiyya of, 427, 428–429, 461–462
- Āghā Khān I in, 464–465, 468–469
- al-Kirmānī, Ḥamīd al-Dīn Ahmād b. 'Abd Allāh, Ismā'ilī dā'i and author, 112, 138, 184–185, 297
- on ancestry of Fātimids, 105
- on doctrine of the imamate, 188, 207
- on Druze doctrines, 187–188
- on *da'wa* hierarchy, 217, 219, 275
- cosmological system, 233–234; adopted by Ṭayyibīs, 234, 265, 269
- on controversy amongst dissident Iranian dā'īs, 225–226
- Kish, near Samarcand, 392
- Kitāb al-'ālim wa'l-ghulām*, of Ja'far b. Manṣūr al-Yaman, 129
- Kitāb al-azhār*, of al-Bharūchī, 279
- Kitāb al-bayān*, of Ghiyāth, 111
- Kitāb al-haft wa'l-azilla*, attributed to al-Mufaḍḍal, 94
- Kitāb al-īdāh*, of al-Qādī al-Nu'mān, 169
- Kitāb al-iftikhār*, of Abū Ya'qūb al-Sijistānī, 155
- Kitāb al-iṣlāḥ*, of Abū Ḥātim al-Rāzī, 154, 225–226
- Kitāb ithbāt al-nubū'āt* (*al-nubuwāt*), of Abū Ya'qūb al-Sijistānī, 227–228
- Kitāb jāmi' al-hikmatayn*, of Nāṣir-i Khusraw, 206–207
- Kitāb kanz al-walad*, of Ibrāhīm b. al-Husayn al-Ḥāmidī, 265
- Kitāb al-kashf*, of Ja'far b. Manṣūr al-Yaman, 98, 118
- Kitāb al-maḥṣūl*, of Muhammad b. Aḥmad al-Nasafi, 133, 154, 225–226
- Kitāb al-nusra*, of Abū Ya'qūb al-Sijistānī, 154–155, 225–226, 228
- Kitāb al-riyād*, of Ḥamīd al-Dīn al-Kirmānī, 225–226
- Kitāb al-rushd wa'l-hidāya*, of Ibn Hawshab, 98
- Kitāb al-siyāsa*, anonymous anti-Ismā'ilī treatise, 8, 9, 102
- Kitāb al-yanābī'*, of Abū Ya'qūb al-Sijistānī, 228
- Kitāb al-zumurrudh*, of Ibn al-Rāwandī, 204
- Kitāb-i dāniš-i ahl-i bīnīsh*, of Fidā'ī Khurāsānī, 407
- Kitāb-i hidāyat al-mu'minīn al-tālibīn*, of Fidā'ī Khurāsānī, 407, 492
- Kiyā Abū 'Alī, Nizārī commander, 324
- Kiyā Abū Ja'far, Nizārī commander, 324
- Kiyā Abu'l-Qāsim Lārijānī, Nizārī dā'i, 314
- Kiyā 'Alī, son of Kiyā Buzurg-Ummīd, 356
- Kiyā Bā Ja'far, Nizārī commander, 343
- Kiyā Buzurg al-Dā'i ilā'l-Ḥaqqa b. al-Hādī, 'Alid Zaydī ruler of Daylamān, 344
- Kiyā Garshāsb, Nizārī commander, 324
- Kiyā Jalāl al-Dīn Hazāraspī, Hazāraspid, 417

- Kiyā Malik Hazāraspī, Hazāraspid ruler of Ashkawar, 416–417
- Kiyā Muḥammad b. ‘Alī Khusraw Fīrūz, Nizārī commander, 356
- Kiyā Sayf al-Dīn Kūshayjī, ruler of Daylamān, 415
- Kiyā Shāh b. Shams al-Dīn Muḥammad, 414
- Kiyāna mountains, in North Africa, 147
- Knights Hospitaller, military order, 13, 14, 352, 368, 369, 390, 391, 400
- Knights Templar, military order, 13, 14, 352, 369, 390, 391
- knowledge, religious, see ‘ilm
- Kokcha, tributary of Oxus river, 206, 452
- Köke-Ilgei, Mongol general, 393, 394
- Kotri, in Sind, 443
- Krak des Chevaliers (Ḥiṣn al-Akrād), castle, in Syria, 369, 400–401
- Kraus, Paul, orientalist, 31
- Kubrā, Shaykh Najm al-Dīn, founder of the Kubrawiyya Sufi order, 427
- Kubrawiyya, Sufi order, 427
- Kūfa, in southern ‘Irāq, founded, 43 under ‘Uthmān, 42–43, 44 under Umayyads, 45, 49, 50, 51, 52, 55, 72, 75, 77 *mawālī* of, 52–53 support for ‘Alī, 46, 47 base of Mughīriyya, 72 base of Hāshimiyya, 61, 76 in revolt of al-Mukhtār, 52–53, 59, 64 al-Saffāh, proclaimed caliph, 78 rising of Khatṭābiyya, 85–86 centre of Shī‘ism, 43, 56, 60, 95; radical, 92; early Ismā‘īlis, 89–90 Qarmaṭī centre, 107–109, 149 attacked by followers of Zikrawayh in 293/906, 123–124 attacked by Qarmaṭīs of Bahrayn, 149, 150, 185 under ‘Uqaylids, 185 Fātimid success in, 184–185, 196 *kufr* (unbelief), 35, 83, 188 Kuhandil Khān, Afghan *amīr*, 468 Kuhdum, in Daylam, 415
- Kūhistān, *see* Quhistān
- Kujūr, in Māzandarān, 417
- Kulayn (Kulīn), village near Rayy, 111 al-Kulaynī (al-Kulīnī), Abū Ja‘far Muḥammad b. Ya‘qūb, Imāmī scholar, 83, 118, 168, 170
- al-Kumayt b. Zayd al-Asādi, Arab poet, 68 *kun* (the Qur’ānic creative imperative), 134, 135, 230
- kūnī*, 134–135, 136, 230
- Kuraybiyya, *see* Karibiyya
- Kurdistān, Kurds, 17, 21, 251, 387, 416
- kursī* (chair), 135, 230
- Kūshayjān, in Daylam, 415
- Kūshayjī, *amīrs*, 415–416, 417
- Kutāma, Berbers, 115, 125, 126, 128 supporters of Fātimids, 126–128, 141, 142, 146, 161, 162, 176, 183, 214 as faction in Fātimid armies, 178–179, 247
- Kutayfāt, Abū ‘Alī Aḥmad, Fātimid vizier, 246–247, 262
- Kuthayyir, Arab poet, 60
- Kütum, in Gilān, 375
- Labrousse, Yvette, fourth wife of Aga Khan III, 483
- Lady ‘Alī Shāh, *see* Shams al-Mulūk, mother of Aga Khan III
- Lahāb, in Yaman, 298
- Lāhijān, in Gilān, 415, 416, 417
- Lāhijī, Shams al-Dīn Muḥammad b. Yaḥyā, Sufi master and author, 419, 427
- lāhiq, lawāhiq*, rank in *da‘wa* hierarchy, 218, 226–227, 231
- al-Lahjī, *see* Musallam b. Muḥammad al-Lahjī
- Lahore, 281, 282, 438
- lāhūt*, 274
- Lama‘āt al-tāhirīn, of Ghulām ‘Alī b. Muḥammad, 414, 454
- Lamak b. Mālik al-Hammādī, chief *qādī* and Ismā‘īli *dā‘ī* in Yaman, 199, 200, 204, 258, 263, 275
- Lamasar, Lanbasar, fortress, in Daylamān, 324, 337, 343, 346, 357, 363, 393–397 *passim*, 411, 416
- Langarids, *see* Musāfirids

- Lāsh va Juvayn, in Afghanistan, 469
 Last Judgement, see *ma‘ād; qiyāma*; eschatology
 law, of Nizārī community, 484, 486–487, 497–501 *passim*, see also *fiqh lawḥ* (tablet), 134, 230, 270
 League of Nations, Geneva, 483
 Lebanon, 189
 Lebey de Batilly, Denis, French official and author, 20
 letters of the alphabet, see *hurūf*
 Lev, Yaakov, 32
 Levant, the, 18, 244
 Lewis, Bernard, 19, 23, 24, 32
 on *mawlā Shī‘ism*, 58
 on Abū Hāshim’s testament, 62
 on ‘spiritual adoption’ for revolutionary Shī‘is, 93
 on Qaddāhids, 103, 107
 on Syrian Nizāris, 309, 310
Liber de causis, see *Kalām fī maḥd al-khayr*
 libertinism, 361–362, 372, see also *ibāha*
 light, divine (*nūr*), 64, 69, 86, 134, 273
lisān al-da‘wa, of the Dā‘ūdīs, 294
 Lisān al-Mulk Sipihr, Muḥammad Taqī, historian, 408
 literature
 early Ismā‘īlī, 87
 Fātimid, 2, 214, 222, 299
 Tayyibī, 241, 253, 265, 282
 Hāfiẓī, 253
 Nizārī, 253, 303–304, 405–406, 408, 418–420, 425, 433–434, 454, 494–495
 Dā‘ūdī, 292
 Sulaymānī, 299
 see also historiography; *ginān*
 Lohana, Hindu caste, 443
 Lombardy, Lombards, 143, 144
 London, 408, 501, 503
 conferences on India, 1903–1904, 483
 Nizārī community of, 497
 Louis IX (St Louis), king of France, 14–15, 22, 390–391
 Lu‘lu’, Ḥamdānid vizier, 183
 Lu‘lu’a, in Yaman, 259
 Luqmānīj b. Ḥabīb, Dā‘ūdī scholar, 285
 Luristān, in western Persia, 353
 Lutf ‘Alī Khān, Afshārid, son of Shāhrukh, 459
 Lutf ‘Alī Khān Zand, 460–461, 462
ma‘ād, 273, 359–360
 see also *qiyāma*; eschatology
Ma‘add, 365
Ma‘arrat Maṣrīn, in Syria, 335
Ma‘arrat al-Nu‘mān, in Syria, 335
 al-Ma‘arrī, Abu'l-‘Alā', Syrian poet-philosopher, 204
al-Mabda‘wa'l-ma‘ād, of Ḥusayn b. ‘Alī Ibn al-Walīd, 267
 Macnaghten, Sir William, British political agent in Kābul, 470
 Mada‘in (Ctesiphon), in ‘Irāq, 43, 64, 79, 185
 Madelung, Wilferd, 32
 on *Umm al-kitāb*, 93
 on *al-Islāh* of Abū Ḥātim al-Rāzī, 154
 on letter of the Fātimid caliph al-Mu‘izz to the Qarmaṭī al-Ḥasan al-A‘šam, 163
 on Ḥamdān Qarmatī, 120
 on Nāṣir-i Khusraw, 209
 on Nizārī doctrine of *qiyāma*, 361
madhhab (school of religious law), 80, 93, 159, 167, 190, 214, 426, 430, 456
ma‘dhūn, rank in *da‘wa* hierarchy, 218, 220, 234, 275, 284, 292, 298, 440, 441
al-ma‘dhūn al-maḥdūd (or *maḥṣūr*), 218, 275
al-ma‘dhūn al-mutlaq, 218
ma‘dhūn-i akbar, 440
ma‘dhūn-i aṣghar, 440
 Madhya Pradesh, in India, 291, 447
Mafātiḥ al-asrār, Qur‘ān commentary (*tafsīr*) of al-Shahrastānī, 340
 Maghāribā, faction in Fātimid armies, 178–179
 Maghrīwa, Berbers, 157
 Maghrib, 102, 103, 106, 110, 122, 125, 141–142, 156, 158, 159, 179, 201, 215, 327
 Magians, see Zoroastrians
 Magliano, Theresa, second wife of Aga Khan III, 482

- Mahallāt, in central Persia 27, 418, 423, 434, 456, 459, 463–468 *passim*, 472, 473, 477, 484, 494,
- Mahallātī, ‘Abd al-Muhammad, 467
- Māhān, in Kirmān, 428, 429, 461
- Maharashtra, in India, 291
- Mahdī, the, 60–61, 71
 Muhammad b. al-Hanafiyya as, 52, 56
 Abū Hāshim ‘Abd Allāh as, 61
 in *ghulāt* doctrines, 64
 in doctrine of Abū Manṣūr, 70
 in Zaydī doctrine, 74
 Ja‘far al-Ṣādiq as, 88, 96–97, 132
 Ismā‘il b. Ja‘far as, 89
 Muhammad b. Ismā‘il as, 96–97, 132, 164–165, 207, 219, 226–227
 for the Qarmatīs, 96–98, 121, 134
 in ‘Abd Allāh al-Mahdī’s reform, 98, 116–119, 164
 the ‘Persian Mahdī’ of Abū Tāhir al-Jannābī, 121, 150, 152, 154, 210
- Muhammad Nūrbakhsh as, 427
 in religious hierarchy, 117
 in Shī‘ī tradition, 72, 119
 Shāh Ismā‘il I as, 430, 435, 437
 see also *qā‘im*; *qā‘im al-qiyāma*
- al-Mahdī, ‘Abd Allāh (‘Ubayd Allāh), first Fātimid caliph, 5, 96, 97, 99, 100, 103, 105, 113, 149, 157, 168, 186, 198, 381
 as caliph, 140–141, 143–144, 145, 152
 flight to the Maghrib, 123–128
 ancestry, 101–107 *passim*
 pseudonym, 104
 doctrinal reform, 99, 116–119, 121–122, 133, 164
 letter to Yamanī Ismā‘ilīs, 101, 104, 118–119
 imamate not recognized by dissident (Qarmatī) Ismā‘ilīs, 116–124 *passim*, 151–152, 226–227
 in Musta‘lian doctrine, 105–106, 238–239
da‘wa: to Khurāsān, 112; in Yaman, 166 and Abū Tāhir al-Jannābī, 149, 151
- al-Mahdī, Abū ‘Abd Allāh, ‘Abbāsid caliph, 79
- Mahdī, ‘Alid, holder of Alamūt, 314
- al-Mahdī, Muḥammad b. ‘Abd Allāh, ‘Abbāsid caliph, *see* al-Mahdī, Abū ‘Abd Allāh
- al-Mahdī, Muḥammad b. al-Ḥasan, twelfth imam of the Twelver Shī‘īs, 38, 39, 107, 247
- Mahdī b. Khusraw Fīrūz (Fīrūzān), Siyāhchashm, Justānid, 152–153
- Mahdībāghwālās, Mahdībāgh party, subgroup of Dā‘ūdīs, 288
- Mahdids, of Zabīd, 259–260
- Mahdīsm, *see* Mahdī; *qā‘im*
- Mahdiyya, Fātimid capital in Ifrīqiya, 142–143, 144, 146, 166, 183, 202
- Mahim, in India, 475
- Mahmūd I, Saljūq sultan, 320
- Mahmūd I Begrā, sultan of Gujarāt, 279, 445
- Mahmūd II, Saljūq sultan, 338, 345–346
- Mahmūd III, sultan of Gujarāt, 279
- Mahmūd ‘Alī, Nizārī poet, 438
- Mahmūd b. Mufarrij b. Daghfal, Jarrāhid, 182
- Mahmūd of Ghazna, Ghaznawid sultan, 116, 155, 167, 185, 200, 418, 449
- Mahmūd Shabistarī, Sufi *shaykh*, 419
- Mahmūdiyya, *see* Nuqtawiyā
- Mahrīz, near Yazd, 468
- majālis, 6, 214–215, 221, 266
- majālis al-*da‘wa* (‘sessions of wisdom’), 215
- majālis al-*ḥikma*, 126–127, 204, 215–216
- al-Majālis al-*Mu’ayyadīyya*, of al-Mu’ayyad fi'l-Dīn al-Shīrāzī, 204, 215
- al-Majālis al-*Mustaṣirīyya*, of al-Malījī, 208
- Majd al-Dīn, Nizārī chief *dā‘ī* in Syria, 389, 390
- Majdhūb ‘Alī Shāh, Ni‘mat Allāhī Sufi master, 463, 465
- al-Majdū‘, Ismā‘il b. ‘Abd al-Rasūl, Dā‘ūdī author, 285–286
- Majid, ‘Abd al-Mun‘im, 32
- Majīdiyya, 238, 248, 256–257, 260
see also Ḥāfiẓīs
- al-Majlisī, Muḥammad Bāqir, Twelver scholar, 168

- Majlis-i maktūb-i Shahrastānī mun‘aqid dar Khwārazm, of al-Shahrastānī*, 340
- Majma‘al-tawārikh*, of Hāfiẓ Abrū, 308
- al-Majrīṭī, Maslama, 236
- Majūs, *see* Zoroastrians
- Makhzūm, Banū, 103
- Makramī, family of Sulaymānī dā‘īs, 295–297, 299
- Makrān, in Persia, 166, 436
- Malagasy Republic, the, 501
- malāhidā*, *see mulhid*
- Malak Ṣāhib, *see* ‘Abd al-Husayn Jīwājī
- al-Malātī, Muḥammad b. Aḥmad, Sunnī heresiographer, 59
- Malātī Sayyids, *see* Amīr Kiyā’ī Sayyids
- Malaysia, 501
- al-Malījī, Abu'l-Qāsim ‘Abd al-Ḥākim b. Wahb, Fātimid chief *qādī* and author, 208
- Mālik al-Ashtar, 45
- al-Malik al-‘Azīz Zahīr al-Dīn Ṭughtakīn, Ayyūbid ruler of Yaman, 260
- Mālik b. Anas, eponym of Mālikī *madhab*, 80
- Mālik b. Sa‘īd, Fātimid chief dā‘ī, 181
- Malik Khāmūsh, son of Özbeg, 387
- al-Malik al-Muzaffar, Rasūlid, 267
- al-Malik al-Rahīm Khusraw Firūz, Büyid, 195–196
- Malik al-Salām, 365
- al-Malik al-Ṣāliḥ, Zangid, 369–370
- Malik Shūlīm, 365
- Malik Yazdāq, 365
- al-Malik al-Zāhir, Rasūlid, 268
- al-Malik al-Zāhir Rukn al-Dīn Baybars I, *see* Baybars I
- al-Malika al-Sayyida, Ṣulayhid queen, *see* Arwā
- Mālikī Sunnism, 80, 126, 127, 128, 141, 143, 144, 159, 163, 168, 170, 172, 181, 192, 201
- Malikshāh I, Saljūq sultan, 197, 314, 319, 320, 327, 330, 331
- Mālwā, in India, 285
- Mamlūks, dynasty, of Egypt and Syria subjugated Syrian Nizarīs, 18, 301, 309, 398, 399–402, 489 succeeded Ayyūbids in Egypt, 254
- al-Ma’mūn, ‘Abbāsid caliph, 88, 89, 223
- al-Ma’mūn, dā‘ī, brother of ‘Abdān, 109
- al-Ma’mūn al-Baṭā’ihī, Fātimid vizier, 244–245, 343
- Ma’mūniyya, 109
- Ma’n, Banū, 199
- Ma’n b. Ḥātim b. al-Ghashīm, Hamdānid, 258
- Manashshā (Manasseh) b. Ibrāhīm, Fātimid official, 177
- Manāzil al-aqtāb*, of Qādī Rahmat Allāh b. Ghulām Muṣṭafā, 444–445
- Mandaeans, 69, 135, 227
- Mangū Khān, *see* Möngke
- Mangūtakīn, governor of Damascus, 176, 179
- Mānī, 227
- Manichaeism, 56, 69, 70, 93, 136, 270, 273–274
- Manīqa (Maynaqa), castle, in Syria, 350, 400, 401, 402
- manṣūb*, 298, 299, 300
- al-Manṣūr, Abū Ja‘far, ‘Abbāsid caliph, 75, 79, 81, 84, 85, 86, 91, 92
- al-Manṣūr, Ayyūbid prince of Ḥamā, 399, 401
- al-Manṣūr, Fātimid caliph, 140, 144, 146–147, 151, 156, 157, 166, 169, 173
- Manṣūr, son of Lu’lu’, 183
- al-Manṣūr ‘Alī b. Ṣalāḥ al-Dīn, Zaydī pretender, 268
- al-Manṣūr b. Buluggīn, Zīrid, 176
- Manṣūr b. ‘Imrān, Zuray‘id, 257
- al-Manṣūr b. al-Mutawakkil, Zaydī imam in Yaman, 296
- al-Manṣūr Muḥammad b. Abī ‘Āmir, chamberlain to Hishām II, 157
- Manṣūr al-Yaman, *see* Ibn Hawshab
- Manṣūra, fortress, in Daylam, 345
- Manṣūra, in Sind, 167
- Manṣūrakūh, fortress, near Dāmghān, 320, 345
- Manṣūriyya, extremist Shī‘ī group, 70–71, 72, 328
- Manṣūriyya, Fātimid capital in Ifriqiya, 142, 147, 159, 169, 191
- al-Maqdisī, *see* Muḥammad b. Ma’shar al-Bustī al-Maqdisī

- al-Maqrīzī, Taqī al-Dīn Ahmad, historian, 8, 101, 139, 140, 213, 254
- Marāgha, in Ādharbayjān, 346, 379
- Mar'ashī Sayyids, of Māzandarān (Tabaristān), 415
- marātib al-da'wa*, see *hudūd*
- Marcion, 227
- Marco Polo, Venetian traveller, 14, 15–18, 19, 20, 24, 25, 368
- Marcus, Valentinian Gnostic, 69
- Mardāwīj b. Ziyār, founder of the Ziyārid dynasty of Persia, 112, 152
- Mārdīn, in 'Irāq, 347
- Marjikūlī, in Daylamān, 415
- Marqab, castle, in Syria, 368
- Marquet, Yves, 32
- Marw, in Khurāsān, 76, 77, 205, 383
- Marw al-Rūdh, in Khurāsān, 111, 113
- Marwān I b. al-Hakam, Umayyad caliph, 51
- Marwān II al-Himār, Umayyad caliph, 74, 75–76, 77, 78
- al-Marwazī, al-Ḥusayn, see al-Ḥusayn b. 'Alī al-Marwazī
- Marxism, 32, 310
- Marzubān I b. Muḥammad, Musāfirid, 121, 153–154
- Marzubān b. Ishāq, *dā'i* in India, 200
- Maṣāla b. Ḥabūs, Fātimid general, 142
- Masār, in Yaman, 199
- Mashāriqa, faction in Fātimid armies, 178–179
- mashāyikh*, see *shaykh*
- Mashāyikh, Pīr, son of Sayyid Fādil Shāh, 448
- Mashhad, in Khurāsān, 406, 407, 492, 493, 494
- Masīla, in North Africa, 147, 157, 160, 180
- maskh*, 65
see also *tanāsukh*
- Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT), Cambridge, Massachusetts, 504
- massacres, 185, 329, 330, 335, 338, 345, 347, 348, 356, 357, 370, 374, 383, 397, 462
- Massignon, Louis, 31, 92, 139
on Abu'l-Khaṭṭāb and spiritual parenthood, 92
- on the Qaddāhids, 103
- on Islamic guilds, 115
- on Fātimid–Qarmaṭī relations, 151
- Mast 'Alī Shāh, *see* Shīrwānī, Zayn al-'Ābidin
- Mas'ūd, Dīhqān, Qarmaṭī *dā'i*, son of Muḥammad b. Ahmad al-Nasafī, 113
- Mas'ūd, Saljūq sultan, 338, 346, 356, 357
- Mas'ūd b. Ḥurayth, Qarmaṭī *dā'i*, 124
- al-Mas'ūd b. al-Karam (or al-Mukarram), Zuray'īd, 199, 255–256
- al-Mas'ūdī, 'Alī b. al-Ḥusayn, historian, 8
- ma'sūm*, see *iṣmā*
- Ma'sūm 'Alī Shāh, Muhammad Ma'sūm Shīrāzī, Ni'mat Allāhī Sufi author, 468, 477
- Ma'sūm 'Alī Shah, Ni'mat Allāhī envoy to Persia, 461, 462
- Maṣyāf, castle, in Syria
Yves le Breton at, 15, 391
- Ismā'ilī manuscript from, 27
- epigraphic evidence from, 309, 389, 390
- Nizārī stronghold, 350, 353, 400; lost to Nuṣayrīs, 489
- Rāshid al-Dīn Sinān at, 368
- besieged by Saladin, 370
- surrendered to Mongols, 399
- under Baybars I, 401
and Muḥammad-Shāhī Nizārīs, 456, 488–490
- Matiya Kanbis, Hindu caste, 446
- Matthew Paris, historian, 14, 388
- al-Māturīdī, Abū Manṣūr, Sunnī theologian, 232
- Māturīdiyya, Sunnī school of theology, 232
- mawālī* (clients), non-Arab Muslims, 52–58 *passim*, 61, 66, 70, 75, 78, 114, 149
- al-Māwardī, Abu'l-Ḥasan 'Alī, Sunnī scholar, 212
- Mawdūd, Saljūq *amīr* of Mawṣil, 334
- mawlā* (client), see *mawālī*
- Mawlā'īs, Nizārīs of Hunza, 495
- Mawṣil, in 'Irāq, 120, 162, 175, 176, 185, 196, 203, 313, 334, 347, 352, 367, 369
- Mawsim-i bahār*, of Muḥammad 'Alī b. Mullā Jiwābhā'ī Rāmpūrī, 240–241
- Maymana, in Central Asia, 111

- al-Maymūn, epithet of Muḥammad b. Ismā‘īl b. Ja‘far, 104
- Maymūn al-Qaddāh, 102–105, *passim*, 106, 107
- Maymūndiz, fortress, in Daylamān, 345, 393, 394–395, 397
- Maymūniyya, designation of the early Ismā‘iliś, 102, 104
- Maynaqa, castle, *see* Manīqa
- Mayṣūr, Fātimid commander, 146
- Mayyāfāriqīn, 312, 347
- Mazagaon, Bombay, 476
- mazālim*, 152
- Māzandarān, *see* Tabaristān
- Mazdāb, village, in Khurāsān, 494
- Mazdak, 227
- Mazdakism, 56, 133
- al-Mazdaqānī, Abū ‘Alī Ṭāhir b. Sa‘d, Būrid vizier, 348
- mazhar* (epiphany), 361, 364
- Mazyadids, of ‘Irāq, 335–336
- Mecca (Makka), 36, 49, 53, 89, 103, 124, 126, 133, 139, 148, 149, 161, 182, 198, 199, 205, 326, 375, 428, 453, 480
- Medina (Madīna), 36, 41, 42, 44, 45, 48, 49, 52, 59, 60, 67, 74, 85, 86, 91, 96, 139, 326
- see also* *ansār*
- Mediterranean Sea, 138, 144, 176, 202
- Melchizedec, 365
- Melkites, 177, 180
- Ménages, Gilles, 21
- Mengli, Eldigüzid lieutenant in ‘Irāq-i ‘Ajam, 377
- Mesopotamia, 42, 43, 223, 227
- see also* ‘Irāq
- Messina, strait of, 143
- metaphysical systems, *see* philosophical Ismā‘iliś; cosmology
- metempsychosis, *see* *tanāsukh*
- Michael, *see* Mīkā’il
- Middle East, 1, 11, 189, 497, 504
- see also* Near East
- Midrārids, of Tāfilālt, 125, 127–128, 156
- Mihrabānid Maliks, of Sīstān (Nīmrūz), 411, 412
- Mihr-i Jahān Khānum, Qājār princess, wife of Sardār Abu'l-Hasan Khān, 472
- Mihrīn (Mihrnigār), fortress, near Dāmghān, 321, 345, 391
- Mīkā’il (Michael), archangel, 134
- Mīkhāl al-Sulaymānī (Ḥaly), in northwestern Yaman, 296
- Miknāsa, Berbers, 142, 157
- Mila, in North Africa, 126, 127
- millenarian, 426, 435
- see also* Mahdi
- Mīnāb, near Bandar ‘Abbās, 469
- minbar* (pulpit in the mosque), 294, 358
- Minhāj-i Sirāj (Minhāj al-Dīn ‘Uthmān b. Sirāj al-Dīn al-Jūzjānī), historian and Sunnī jurist, 383, 384
- Minto, Earl of, Viceroy of India, 482
- al-Miqdād b. al-Aswad al-Kindī, 39
- mīr*, 405, 452, 488, 495–496
- Mīr Dāmād (Mīr Muḥammad Bāqir b. Shams al-Dīn Muḥammad Astarābādī), theosopher, 420
- Mīr Sayyid Aḥmad Kāshī, Nuqtawī leader, 422
- Mīr Sharīf Āmulī, Nuqtawī leader, 422
- Mīr Shīr Khān, Balūchī *amīr*, 470
- Mīrānshāh, son of Timūr, 421
- Mir’āt al-zamān*, of Sibṭ Ibn al-Jawzī, 309
- Mirdāsids, of northern Syria, 183, 192, 195
- Mīrkhwānd, Muḥammad b. Khwāndshāh, historian, 25, 308, 312
- Mīrshāhī, Ṣadr al-Dīn b. Mullā Shams al-Dīn, grandson of Fidā’ī Khurāsānī, 407
- Mīrzā Ḥasan b. Ḫusayn b. Ya‘qūb Shāh, representative of Āghā Khān I in Persia, 490
- Mīrzā Husayn Khān, Zand governor of Kirmān, 460
- Mīrzā Khān, Tīmūrid *amīr* of Badakhshan, 452
- Mīrzā Ṣādiq, cousin of the Nīzārī Imam Abu'l-Hasan ‘Alī, 460, 461, 462
- Miskawayh, Abū ‘Alī Aḥmad, historian, 139, 154
- mīṣr, amsār* (garrison towns), 42, 43, 54–55, 114
- mīthāq* (oath), 218, 293–294; *see also* ‘ahd; *bay‘a*
- Miyājiq, Khwārazmian general, 374

Miyānī, battle of, 470
 Mombasa, in Kenya, 291, 293, 486
 Mōmnas, subgroup of Khojas, 448
 Möngke, Great Khan, 15, 18, 388–389, 397, 399
 Mongolia, Mongols, 3, 4, 15, 78, 378, 387, 389, 391, 397, 410, 452
 in medieval (occidental) accounts, 15
 and medieval (Persian) historians, 304–307
 French mission (AD 1253) to, 15, 388–389, 390
 and Nizārīs of Persia, 18, 376, 377, 382, 388–389; alliances against, 388; conquest of, 301, 391–398; took Girdkūh, 391, 397–398; destroyed Nizārī castles, 304, 375; took Maymūndiz, 394–395; took Alamūt, 395–396, 410; took Lamasar, 396–397; *fidā’is* on mission to, 389 and Nizārīs of Syria, 397–398 overthrew ‘Abbāsids, 78, 388, 398 attacked Sīstān, 384 and the Khwārazmshāhs, 386 and Ayyūbids of Syria, 398–399
 Morbi, in India, 278
 Morocco, 125, 145, 156
 Moses, *see* Mūsā
 Mount Lebanon, 21
 al-Mu‘allā b. Khunays, 91
mu‘allim (teacher), 341, 379, 438, 440, 441, 492, 493, 499
mu‘āmalāt (worldly affairs), 169
 Mu‘āwiya I b. Abī Sufyān, founder of the Umayyad caliphate, 44, 45–46, 48, 49
 Mu‘āwiya II, Umayyad caliph, 51
 Mu‘āwiya b. ‘Abd Allāh b. Ja‘far, Tālibid, 62
 al-Mu‘ayyad bīllāh Ahmād b. al-Ḥusayn b. Hārūn, Zaydī imam, 105
 Mu‘ayyad al-Dīn, Nizārī vizier to Rukn al-Dīn Khurshāh, 395
 Mu‘ayyad al-Dīn Mużaffar b. Ahmād al-Mustawfī, *see* Muzaffar, *ra’īs*, commandant of Girdkūh
 al-Mu‘ayyad fīl-Dīn al-Shirāzī, Abū Naṣr Hibat Allāh, Ismā‘īlī *dā’ī* and author, 6, 181, 196, 199, 200, 203–204, 205, 207, 215, 217, 311, 312, 313

al-Mubārak, epithet of Ismā‘īl b. Ja‘far, 90, 104
 Mubārakiyya, designation of the early Ismā‘īlīs, 90, 93, 95–96, 99, 104
 Mubārakkūh, castle, in Daylam, 356
al-mubda‘ al-awwal, 229, 270
 Mūchūl Shāh, son of Jalāl Shāh, 491
 Mudhaykhira, in Yaman, 122
 al-Mufaḍḍal b. Abī'l-Barakāt, Ṣulayḥid general, 256, 258
 al-Mufaḍḍal b. ‘Umar al-Ju‘fi, eponym of Mufaḍḍaliyya, 91–92
 Mufaḍḍaliyya, 92, 94
 Mufarrij b. Daghfal, Jarrāhid ruler of Palestine, 175, 179, 182
 Mufarrij b. al-Ḥasan b. al-Ṣūfī, prefect of Damascus, 348
 Muflīḥ, governor of Ādharbajān, 112, 153
 Mughal empire, 277, 280, 281, 282, 284, 422
 al-Mughīra b. Sa‘īd, eponym of Mughīriyya, 64, 69–70, 71, 72, 77
 Mughīriyya, extremist Shī‘ī group, 70, 72, 326
muhājirūn (Emigrants), 36, 38
 Muḥammad, the Prophet, 1, 34, 36, 48, 83, 117, 234, 326, 336, 501
 succession to, 1, 36–37, 38, 97
 hereditary sanctity of his family, 41, 47, 431
 definition of his family, 57–58, 73, 82–83
 as one of *ülu'l-'azm* prophets, 97, 131
 ‘Alī as his successor, 39, 81–83, 97, 131–132, 247
 ‘Alī as his *hujja*, 118–119
 ended cycle of prophecy (*nubuwwa*), 65, 84
 era of, 86, 131–132, 150, 164, 208, 210, 223, 227, 232, 274, 282, 381
 in *Umm al-kitāb*, 94, 98
 in Mukhammaṣa thought, 94
 in Nuṣayrī thought, 94–95
 as sixth *nātiq*, 94, 97, 98, 129, 131–132
 Ismā‘īlī imams' descent from, 128
hadīths of, in Ismā‘īlī law, 170
 in Nizārī doctrine: Ḥasan-i Ṣabbāh's doctrine of *ta‘līm*, 342; *imām-qā'im*

- in era of, 365; anticipatory *qiyyāmas*
in era of, 300–381
see also *ahl al-bayt*; Fātimids: genealogy
- Muhammad, son of Aḥmad I, sultan of
Gujarāt, 278
- Muhammad, son of the Fātimid caliph
al-‘Azīz, 178
- Muhammad, son of Ḥasan-i Ṣabbāḥ, 344
- Muhammad I, Saljūq sultan, *see*
Muhammad Tapar
- Muhammad II, Nizārī imam and lord of
Alamūt, 302, 363–365, 366, 367, 371,
374–375
- Muhammad III, Nizārī imam, *see* ‘Alā’
al-Dīn Muhammad III
- Muhammad Abu’l-Qāsim al-Muntazar
li-Amr Allāh, al-Imām, *see* al-Mahdī,
Muhammad b. al-Ḥasan
- Muhammad Akbar Khān, son of Dūst
Muhammad, 470
- Muhammad ‘Alī b. Mullā Jiwābhā’ī
Rāmpūrī, Da’ūdī Bohra
historian, 240
- Muhammad Amiruddin, leader of
Mahdībāghwālās, 288
- Muhammad b. ‘Abd al-Wahhāb, founder
of the Wahhābī movement, 296
- Muhammad b. Aḥmad, Sa‘id al-Khayr
(al-Hakīm), uncle of the Fātimid
‘Abd Allāh al-Mahdī, 100
- Muhammad b. ‘Alī b. ‘Abd Allāh b.
al-‘Abbās, ‘Abbāsid, 61–62,
76
- Muhammad b. ‘Alī b. al-Ḥusayn, Akhū
Muhsin, anti-Ismā‘ilī author, 8, 25,
107, 111, 117, 119, 152
on alleged Qaddāhid foundation of
Ismā‘ilism, 101–102
on Qarmaṭī doctrine of the imamate,
102–103
on Ismā‘ilī schism, 117
on initiation into Ismā‘ilism, 129–130,
220–221
preserved in later works, 8, 101, 111
preserves letter of the Fātimid caliph
al-Mu‘izz, 162
quotes the *Kitāb al-siyāsa*, 8, 102
- Muhammad b. ‘Alī al-Bāqir, *see*
Muhammad al-Bāqir, imam
- Muhammad b. ‘Alī al-Tanūkhī, *see*
al-‘Azīmī
- Muhammad b. Anaz, Saljūq *amīr*, 357
- Muhammad b. Buzurg-Ummīd, Nizārī
leader and lord of Alamūt, 302, 326,
355–358, 360, 361, 363, 364
- Muhammad b. Dā’ūd al-Jarrāḥ, ‘Abbāsid
official, 99
- Muhammad b. al-Fath, Midrārid
amīr, 156
- Muhammad b. al-Ḥanafīyya, son of ‘Alī
b. Abī Tālib, 52, 58, 60, 67, 90
- Muhammad b. al-Ḥasan b. Idrīs b.
al-Walīd, Tayyibī *dā’ī muṭlaq*, 269,
279
- Muhammad b. al-Ḥasan al-Mahdī, *see*
al-Mahdī, Muhammad b. al-Ḥasan
- Muhammad b. Ḥātim b. al-Ḥusayn b.
al-Walīd, Tayyibī *dā’ī muṭlaq*, 268
- Muhammad b. Ḥaydara, Fātimid envoy to
Yaman, 262
- Muhammad b. ‘Imrān, Zuray‘id, 257
- Muhammad b. Islām Shāh, Nizārī
imam, 418, 446
- Muhammad b. Ismā‘il b. Ja‘far al-Ṣādiq,
Ismā‘ilī imam, 89, 90, 93, 95–96, 99,
104, 107, 111, 207, 223, 235, 326, 381
position in series of imams, 90, 97
pseudonym, 104
as Ismā‘ilī (Qarmaṭī) Qā’im, 96–97, 98,
102, 108, 117–119, 132, 147, 150,
152, 155, 208, 210
- Mahdīship denied by ‘Abd Allāh
al-Mahdī, 116–119, 164–165
and Fātimid genealogy, 90, 97, 99,
100–102, 105–107
in epistle, 104, and reform of the
Fātimid caliph al-Mu‘izz, 164–167
in account of Ibn Rizām-Akhū
Muhsin, 101, 102, 103
in writing of al-Ṣūrī, 208
in Iranian school of philosophical
Ismā‘ilism, 226–227
in *Epistles*, 236
in Khoja tradition, 385
as ancestor of Ni‘mat Allāh Wali, 428;
of Akhū Muhsin, 101
- Muhammad b. Jahāngīr, Iskandarid ruler
of Kujūr, 417

- Muhammad b. Khwāndshāh, *see* Mīrkhwānd
- Muhammad b. Ma'shar al-Bustī al-Maqdisī, 235
- Muhammad b. al-Mufaddal, 93
- Muhammad b. Mu'min Shāh, Muhammad-Shāhī Nizārī imam, 415
- Muhammad b. Musāfir, founder of the Musāfrid dynasty of Daylam and Ādharbayān, 153
- Muhammad b. Muslim al-Tā'ifī, Imāmī scholar, 68
- Muhammad b. al-Nu'mān b. Muhammād, Abū 'Abd Allāh, Fātimid chief *qādī*, 172, 215
- Muhammad b. Nuṣayr, eponym of Nuṣayriyya, 94
- Muhammad b. Saba', Zuray'īd, 256–257
- Muhammad b. Sa'ūd, *amīr* of Dir'iyya, 296
- Muhammad b. Tāhir al-Hārithī, Ṭayyibī author, 266, 267
- Muhammad b. Ṭughj al-Ikhshīd, founder of the Ikhshīdid dynasty of Egypt and southern Syria, 143
- Muhammad b. Ya'qūb, chamberlain to the 'Abbāsid al-Rādī, 151
- Muhammad b. Zayd, 'Alid ruler of Tabaristān, 153
- Muhammad Badr al-Dīn, Dā'ūdī *dā'ī*, 286
- Muhammad al-Bāqir, imam, 67–69, 70, 71, 81, 93, 97, 103, 170
- Muhammad Bāqir Khān, brother of Āghā Khān I, 465, 468–469, 470–471, 475
- Muhammad Burhān al-Dīn b. 'Abd al-Qādir Najm al-Dīn, Dā'ūdī *dā'ī*, 288, 289
- Muhammad Burhān al-Dīn b. Ṭāhir Sayf al-Dīn, Sayyidnā, Dā'ūdī *dā'ī*, 290–291
- Muhammad Bustī, Nizārī jurist, 359
- Muhammad al-Dībāj, 'Alid, son of Ja'far al-Šādiq, 88, 91
- Muhammad Ḥasan al-Ḥusaynī, Nizārī imam, *see* Āghā Khān I
- Muhammad Ḥasan Khān Sīstānī, 460
- Muhammad Husayn Maḥmūdī, representative of Aga Khan III, 492
- Muhammad Jamāl Rāzī, Nizārī *dā'ī*, 314
- Muhammad Khāqān, Nizārī envoy, 359
- Muhammad Khudābanda, Īlkhanid, *see* Öljetü
- Muhammad Khudābanda, Ṣafawid shāh, 436
- Muhammad Ma'sūm Shīrāzī, *see* Ma'sūm 'Alī Shāh, Muhammad Ma'sūm Shīrāzī
- Muhammad Muqīm, Ṣafawid official, 436
- Muhammad al-Nafs al-Zakiyya, *see* al-Nafs al-Zakiyya
- Muhammad Nāshī Shahrastānī, Khwāja, Nizārī envoy, 345–346
- Muhammad Riḍā b. Khwāja Sultān Husayn Ghūriyānī Harātī, *see* Khayrkhwāh-i Harātī
- Muhammad Šādiq Maḥallātī, Ni'mat Allāhī Sufi, maternal grandfather of Āghā Khān I, 463
- Muhammad Shāh, Imām-Shāhī leader, 447
- Muhammad Shāh III, Tughluqid, 277
- Muhammad Shāh b. Mu'min Shāh, Muhammad-Shāhī Nizārī imam, 414, 451
- Muhammad Shāh Qājār 464–468 *passim*, 469–470, 472, 473
- Muhammad Tāhir, leader of Ja'farī Bohras, 280
- Muhammad Tapar, Saljuq sultan, 320, 331, 334, 335–338
- Muhammad al-Taqī (al-Jawād), Twelver imam, 89
- Muhammad Tīmūr, governor of Qandahār, 469
- Muhammadan Anglo-Oriental College, *see* Aligarh, University of
- Muhammadan National Association, 477
- Muhammadiyya, Fātimid capital in Ifrīqiya, 142
- Muhammad-Shāhī Nizārīs, *see* Muhammad-Shāhīs
- Muhammad-Shāhīs (or Mu'miniyya), branch of Nizārīs, 32, 405, 415–416, 418, 435, 448, 451–456

- literature, 406, 413, 454
 of Syria, 408, 413–414, 488–490
 and Qāsim-Shāhīs, 413–414, 417, 432,
 433, 455–456, 490
 al-Muḥannak, historian, 246
Muhibb ‘Alī Qunduzī, Muḥammad-Shāhī Nizārī author, 414
Muhibb al-Dīn Ḥabib Allāh, grandson of Ni‘mat Allāh Walī Kirmānī, 429
 al-Muhtadī, Nizārī imam, 363, 364
muhtasham, leader of Nizārīs of Quhistān, 319, 353, 376, 378, 388, 393
Mu‘īn al-Dīn II b. ‘Azīz Shāh,
 Muḥammad-Shāhī Nizārī imam, 455
Mu‘īn al-Dīn Abū Naṣr Aḥmad, Saljūq vizier, 345
Mu‘īn al-Dīn b. Ṣadr al-Dīn,
 Muḥammad-Shāhī Nizārī imam, 455
al-Mu‘izz, Fātimid caliph, 122, 133, 144,
 154, 156–163, 173, 176, 178
 refutes alleged Qaddāhid ancestry of his family, 104–105
 attempts to win over dissident Ismā‘īlīs, 122, 155, 164–167, 230
 doctrinal reform, 164–166, 207, 208,
 228, 230, 233
 conquest of Egypt, 158–161
 and the Byzantines, 144
 and the Qarmaṭīs, 154, 161–162
 and al-Qādī al-Nu‘mān, 169
 and Ja‘far b. Manṣūr al-Yaman, 165–166
al-Mu‘izz b. Bādīs, Zīrid, 183, 201–202
Mu‘izz al-Dawla, Büyid, 178
Mu‘izzī dynasty, of India, 383
Mu‘izzīyya, in Sicily, *see* Taormina
mujtahid, 461, 462
al-Mukarram Ahmad, Șulayhid, 199–200,
 255, 257–258, 263
mukāsir, rank in *da‘wa* hierarchy, 190,
 218–219, 275, 287, 292, 298
Mukhammisa (the Pentadists), extremist Shi‘ī group, 94–95
mukhi (Nizārī Ismā‘īlī functionary), 443,
 446, 474, 476, 501
 etymology, 443
 in Aga Khan Case, of 1866, 475–476
 in East Africa, 486, 499; Zanzibar, 485–486
 in South Asia, 474, 487, 500
 in Persia, 493
 in Nizārī Constitution of 1986, 501
al-Mukhtār b. Abī ‘Ubayd al-Thaqafī,
 leader of anti-Umayyad revolt, 52–53, 56, 57, 58, 59, 61, 63, 64, 77
Mukhtāriyya, 59, 64
see also Kaysāniyya
al-Muktafi, ‘Abbāsid caliph, 122, 123
mulhid, malāhida (heretics), 7, 12, 17, 24,
 116, 206, 360, 412, 422
mullā, in Dā‘udī *da‘wa*, 293, 298
Mullā ‘Abd Allāh, mujtahid in Kirmān, 462
Mullā Ḥasan, brother of Fidā’ī Khurāsānī, 493
Mullā Ṣadrā Shirāzī, Ṣadr al-Dīn, theosopher, 420
Multān, in Sind
 seat of Fātimid vassal state, 116, 166,
 176
 converts to Druze *da‘wa* of al-Muqtanā, 188
 attacked by Ghūrids, 374; by Maḥmūd of Ghazna, 116, 185, 200
Nizārīs of, 385, 438, 442–443, 444, 449,
 451
Mumbai, *see* Bombay
mu‘min (believer), 66, 273–274, 275, 293,
 420, 432, 448
mu‘min al-balāgh, 219
Mu‘min Shāh, ‘Alā’ al-Dīn, Muḥammad-Shāhī Nizārī imam, 414
Mu‘min al-Ṭāq, Imāmī scholar, 84, 89
Mu‘minābād, near Bīrjand, 319, 353, 359,
 361, 362, 406, 438, 494
Mu‘miniyya, *see* Muḥammad-Shāhīs
al-Munājāt, of the Fātimid caliph al-Mu‘izz, 165
Munawwar ‘Alī Shāh, Ni‘mat Allāhī Sufi master, 477
Mu‘nis al-Khādim, ‘Abbāsid commander, 149
Munqidh, Banū, of Syria, 335, 350
al-Muntafiq, Banū, of eastern Arabia,
 185

- Muntaza* ‘al-akhbār, of Quṭb al-Dīn Sulaymānji Burhānpūrī, 240
- Muqaddim al-Dīn, commandant of Alamūt, 396
- muqallid* (emulator), 171
- Muqātil, Banū, of Yaman, 291
- muqātila*, 42
- Muqattām hills, near Cairo, 190–191
- al-Muqtadir, ‘Abbāsid caliph, 143, 149
- al-Muqtāfi, ‘Abbāsid caliph, 356
- al-Muqtanā, Bahā’ al-Dīn, Druze leader, 187–188, 189, 190
- Murād Bakhsh, Mughal ruler in Gujarāt, 284
- Murād Mīrzā, Nizārī imam, 422, 425, 435–436, 437
- Murād Mīrzā b. Ḥasan, of Sidihi, eponym of Murād Mīrzā’īs, 490–491, 492–493
- Murād Mīrzā’īs, dissident Nizārīs of Khurāsān, 491–493
- murīd, murīdān*, 419, 428, 430, 431, 436, 440, 444, 453, 466
- Murra b. ‘Āmir, Banū, of eastern Arabia, 210
- murshid*, 412, 428, 431, 433, 444, 476
see also *pīr; quṭb; shaykh*
- Mūsā (Moses), 94, 97, 98, 131, 208, 227, 365
- Mūsā b. Abi’l-‘Āfiya, Berber chief, 142
- Mūsā b. Sayf al-Mulk b. ‘Amrūn, 350
- Mūsā Kalīm al-Dīn, Dā’ūdī dā’ī, 284–285
- Mūsā al-Kāzīm, Twelver imam, 88–89, 90, 91, 92, 95, 96, 170, 204, 430, 452
- Mūsā Khān b. Muḥammad Khān Khurāsānī, 407
- Muṣ‘ab b. al-Zubayr, 53
- Musāfirids, of Daylam and Ādharbayjān, 121, 153–154, 317
- Musallam b. Muḥammad al-Lahjī, Yamanī Zaydī historian, 230
- Muṣāra’at al-falāsifa*, of al-Shahrastānī, 340, 380
- Muscat (Masqaṭ), in ‘Umān, 291, 486
- musharrifāt*, of Sulaymānī dā’īs, 299
- Musha’sha’, 426
- Mushtaq ‘Alī Shāh, Mīrzā Muḥammad Turbatī, Ni’mat Allāhī Sufi, 461–462
- Mushtaqīyya, mausoleum, in Kirmān, 462
- Muslim b. ‘Aqīl, Tālibid, 50, 52
- Muslim b. ‘Awsaja, 49, 50
- al-Mustadī’, ‘Abbāsid caliph, 252
- al-Muṣṭafā li-Dīn Allāh Nizār, *see* Nizār b. al-Mustanṣir
- Muṣṭafā Muḥlīm, Nizārī *amīr* of Maṣyāf, 489
- mustajib*, 219, 220, 221, 273, 275, 440, 442
- Musta’lawiyya, *see* Musta’lians
- al-Musta’lī, Fātimid caliph, 3, 211, 238, 241–243, 243–244, 245, 261, 263, 277, 301, 324–325, 333, 343
- Musta’lians, Musta’liyya (or Musta’lawiyya), 1, 3, 238–239, 242–243, 332
- enumeration of imams, 97, 238–239
- Hāfiẓī–Tayyibī schism, 23, 246–248, 256–260, 262, 264, 277, 325
- see also* Bohras; Dā’ūdīs; Hāfiẓīs; Nizārī–Musta’lī schism; Sulaymānīs; Tayyibīs
- Musta’liyya, *see* Musta’lians
- al-Mustanṣir, ‘Abbāsid caliph, 388
- al-Mustanṣir, Fātimid caliph, 2, 137, 140, 196–198 *passim*, 199–211 *passim*, 217, 237, 244, 258, 263, 310, 313, 332, 359–363 *passim*, 385
- accession and early years, 193–195
- and Fātimid doctrine of the imamate, 207–209, 223
- and Badr al-Jamālī, 194–195, 211
- succession to, 3, 211, 241–243, 245, 301, 324–325
- and Hasan-i Ṣabbāḥ, 312, 313
- Mustanṣir bi’llāh II, Nizārī imam, 418, 422–423, 425, 431–433, 445
- Mustanṣir bi’llāh III, Nizārī imam, *see* Gharīb Mīrzā
- mustaqarr* imam, *see under* imam
- al-Mustarshid, ‘Abbāsid caliph, 338, 346, 356
- al-Musta’ṣim, ‘Abbāsid caliph, 388, 398
- mustawda’* imam, *see under* imam
- al-Mustazhir, ‘Abbāsid caliph, 10, 320, 336, 342
- al-Mustazhirī, of al-Ghazālī, 10, 209–210, 342

- mut‘a* (temporary marriage), 69, 171
 al-Mu‘taqid, ‘Abbāsid caliph, 109, 110, 122
 al-Muṭahhar b. Sharaf al-Dīn, Zaydī imam in Yaman, 280
 al-Mu‘tamid, ‘Abbāsid caliph, 108
 al-Mutawakkil Ahmād b. Sulaymān, Zaydī imam in Yaman, 259
 al-Mutawakkil Yaḥyā, Zaydī imam in Yaman, 297
 Mu‘tazilis, Mu‘tazila, school of theology, 73, 75, 102, 219, 228, 235
 al-Muṭī, ‘Abbāsid caliph, 159
mutimm, atimma’ (completers), 132
 Muwaffaq al-Dawla ‘Alī, grandfather of Rashīd al-Dīn Faḍl Allāh, 306
 Muwaḥhidūn, *see* Almohads; Druzes
 Muẓaffar, *ra’is*, commandant of Girdkūh, 315, 321
 Muẓaffar, *ra’is*, Nizārī leader in Quhistān, 359
 Muẓaffar II, sultan of Gujārāt, 279
 Muẓaffar III, sultan of Gujārāt, 281
 Muẓaffar ‘Alī Shāh, Ni‘mat Allāhī Sufi, 461, 462
 Muẓaffar al-Dīn Shāh Qājār, 481
 al-Muẓaffar Qutuz, Mamlūk sultan, 399
nabī, anbiyā’ (prophets), 36, 118
 Nādir Shāh Afshār, founder of the Afshārid dynasty of Persia, 457–458, 459
nafs (soul), 65, 229–230, 231
al-nafs al-hissiyā, 229
al-nafs al-kulliyā, 190, 229
al-nafs al-nāmiya, 229
al-nafs al-nātiqa, 229
 al-Nafs al-Zakiyya, Muḥammad b. ‘Abd Allāh, Ḥasanid leader of revolt, 68, 71, 72, 73, 74, 75, 80
 Nagir, in northern Pakistan, 495
 Nāgoshiyya, subgroup of ‘Alawī Dā’udīs, 282
 Nagpur, in India, 288
 Nahrawān, battle of, 46
 Nā’ib al-Ṣadr, *see* Ma‘ṣūm ‘Alī Shāh, Muḥammad Ma‘ṣūm Shīrāzī
 Nā’īn, in Persia, 459
 Nairobi, in Kenya, 293, 483, 486, 497
 Najaf, in ‘Irāq, 463, 468, 472, 479, 480
 al-Najāh, founder of the Najāhid dynasty of Yaman, 199
 Najāhids, of Yaman, 198, 199, 256, 258, 259, 264
 al-Najāshī, Ahmād b. ‘Alī, Imāmī scholar, 68, 168
 Najd, in the Hijāz, 296, 297
 Najm al-Dīn Ismā‘il b. al-Sha‘rānī, Nizārī chief *dā’ī* in Syria, 399–400, 401
 Najm al-Dīn al-Khabūshānī, Shāfi‘ī theologian, 252
 Najrān, in northeastern Yaman, 296, 297, 298
najwā, 215
 Nakhshab, *see* Nasaf
 al-Nakhshabī, Muḥammad b. Ahmād, *see* al-Nasafī, Muḥammad b. Ahmād
 Nanji, Azim, 32, 448
 Napier, General Sir Charles, conqueror of Sind, 470
 Naples, 32, 144
naqīb, nuqabā’, 76, 77, 190, 218
 Naqīl Banī Sharḥā, near Ṣan‘ā’, 265
 Naqīl Ṣayd, in Yaman, 257
 Nar (Nūr) Muḥammad, son of Imām Shāh, 445–446
 Narmāshīr, in Kirmān, 460, 464
 Nasaf (Nakhshab), in Transoxania, 113
 Nasafī, Azīz al-Dīn, Sufi author, 420
 al-Nasafī, Muḥammad b. Ahmād, Ismā‘ili (Qarmatī) *dā’ī* and author, 113, 133, 154, 225–226, 230, 232, 233
 al-Nasawī, Muḥammad b. Ahmād, secretary and chronicler of Sultan Jalāl al-Dīn Khwārazmshāh, 376, 386, 387
 Nashtakīn, Druze leader, *see* al-Darazī
 al-Nāṣir, ‘Abbāsid caliph, 373–374, 375, 376–377, 386, 389
 Nāṣir al-Dawla, Turkish commander, 194
 Nāṣir al-Dawla Aftakīn, governor of Alexandria, 242
 Nāṣir al-Dīn, *pīr*, 443
 Nāṣir al-Dīn ‘Abd al-Rahīm b. Abī Mansūr, Nizārī *muḥtasham* in Quhistān, 378–379, 393

- Naṣir al-Dīn Muḥammad, Mihrabānid, 411
 Naṣir al-Dīn Shāh Qājār, 423, 472–473, 481
 Naṣir al-Dīn al-Tūsī, *see* al-Tūsī, Naṣir al-Dīn
 Naṣir al-Dīn ‘Uthmān, Naṣrid *amīr* of Sīstān, 383–384
 Naṣir Khān, Tālpur *amīr* of Kalāt, 470
 al-Nāṣir li-Dīn Allāh Aḥmad b. Yahyā, Zaydī imam in Yaman, 230
 al-Nāṣir li'l-Ḥaqqa, Zaydī imam in Tabaristān, *see* al-Hasan b. 'Alī al-Uṭrūsh
 al-Nāṣir Nāṣir al-Dīn Muḥammad, Mamlūk sultan, 402
 Nāṣir-i Khusraw, Ismā'īlī *dā'i* and author, 30, 205–207, 226, 233, 312, 428, 440 published in the West, 28, 30 on Qarmaṭīs of Bahrayn, 111, 210 on the doctrine of the imamate, 208–209 *da'wa* activities in Khurāsān, 206, 218, 325 supposed author of *Kalām-i pīr*, 433 revered by Nizārīs: of Badakhshan, 206–207, 407, 494; of Khurāsān, 493 Nāṣirīyya, Zaydī community in Tabaristān, 314 Nāṣirwands, of Lāhījān, 416 Naslān, *dā'i*, 262
 Naṣr II, Sāmānid *amīr*, 112, 113
 Naṣr al-'Ajamī, *see* Abū Manṣūr b. Muḥammad
 Naṣr b. 'Abbās b. Abi'l-Futūḥ, 250
 Naṣr b. Sayyār, Umayyad governor, 73, 77
 Naṣrābād, village, in Khurāsān, 494
 Naṣrid Maliks, of Sīstān (Nimrūz), 374, 383
naṣṣ (designation), 39, 60, 64, 67–68, 71, 72, 73, 81, 88, 211, 241, 243, 245, 248, 262, 275, 281, 284, 286–287, 289, 292, 296, 324, 375, 376, 391, 417 *see also* imamate; principle of *naṣṣ*
nāṣūt, 274
nāṭiq, nūṭaqā' (speaking or law-announcing prophets)
- in doctrine of Abu'l-Khaṭṭāb, 86
 in doctrine of Mukhammaṣa, 94
 in early Ismā'īlī (Qarmaṭī) doctrine, 97–98, 117–118, 120, 131–132, 134
 in Fāṭimid doctrine, 164–165, 208–209, 217, 223, 272
 in writing of Nāṣir-i Khusraw, 209
 in Iranian school of philosophical Ismā'īlism, 226–228, 231, 234
 Navanagar, *see* Jamnagar
 al-Nawbakhtī, Abū Muḥammad al-Ḥasan b. Mūsā, Imāmī scholar and heresiographer, 9, 87, 98, 102, 116, 117 on the Kaysāniyya, 59, 61 on *Ismā'īliyya al-khāliṣa*, 89–90 on the Khaṭṭābiyya, 85, 90 on the Qarmaṭīs, 96–97, 102, 107, 109 on early Ismā'īlī imams, 96–97, 117 omits mention of Ibn al-Qaddāḥ, 103 *Naw-hiṣār*, ceremonies of, 494
 Nawsārī, in Gujarāt, 442
 Nāwūsiyya, early Shī'ī sect, 88
 Near East, 11, 19, 20, 69, 114, 115, 145, 201, 243, 368
see also Middle East
 Neoplatonism, 223
 Pseudo-Aristotelian works, 224 in cosmology of Iranian school of philosophical Ismā'īlism, 228–231
 in Fāṭimid teaching, 166, 230, 232–233 of al-Nasafī, 113, 154, 225–226, 233 of Abū Ḥātim al-Rāzī, 225–227, 228, 233 of al-Sijistānī, 155, 225–228 of al-Kirmānī, 225–226, 233–234 of *Rasā'il Ikhwān al-Ṣafā'*, 235–237 in Druze doctrine, 189–190 in Ṭāyyibī cosmology, 234, 269
 Nestorian Christianity, 15
 New Testament, 233
 Nicephorus II Phocas, Byzantine emperor, 145
 Nih, in Sīstān, 384
 Nile, river and valley, 138, 201, 251, 496 Ni'mat Allāh Wali Kirmānī, Shāh, founder of the Ni'mat Allāhiyya, 427–429, 461

- Ni‘mat Allāhiyya (Ni‘mat Allāhī), Sufi
orde 421, 427–429 *passim*, 431, 435,
456, 461–462, 463–464, 465–467,
477–479
- Nīmrūz, *see* Sīstān
- al-Nīsābūrī, Ahmād b. Ibrāhīm, Ismā‘ilī
dā‘ī and author, 5, 219–220
- Nīshāpūr (Nīsābūr), in Khurāsān, 108,
113, 195, 206, 221, 224, 312, 345,
383, 406, 492, 494
- al-Nīshāpūrī, Muḥammad b. Surkh,
Ismā‘ilī author, 155
- Nīṣibīn, in ‘Irāq, 59
- Niyāzī, Nīzārī poet, 438
- Nīzām al-Dawla, Mīrzā ‘Alī Muḥammad,
maternal grandfather of Aga Khan
III, 480
- Nīzām al-Mulk, Saljūq vizier, 9, 111, 197,
209, 312, 314, 319, 337
- Nīzām al-Mulk Mas‘ūd b. ‘Alī,
Khwārazmian vizier, 374
- Nīzāmiyya, party, 320
- Nīzāmiyya Madrasa, Baghdad, 10
- Nīzām-Shāhs, of Ahmādnagar, 452–455
passim
- Nīzār II, Nīzārī imam, *see* Shāh Nīzār II
- Nīzār b. al-Muṣṭanṣir, Nīzārī imam, 3, 10,
211, 241–242, 313, 325–326,
342–343, 381, 385
- succession to imamate, 3, 241–242, 245,
301, 324–325
- as ancestor of Ḥasan II ‘alā
dhikrihi'l-salām, 361, 363–364,
381
- Nīzārī Quhīstānī, Ḥakīm Sa‘d al-Dīn b.
Shams al-Dīn, Nīzārī poet, 406,
411–413, 419
- Nīzārids, branch of Fāṭimids, 325–326,
363
- Nīzārī–Musta‘lī schism, of 487/1094, 2–3,
221, 241–243, 245, 311, 324–325,
342–343, 449, 451
- in *al-Hidāya al-Āmiriyah*, following
meeting of 516/1122 in Cairo, 245,
325, 326, 343
- in Yaman, 243, 263–264
- in Persia, 243, 324–325, 328
- in Syria, 243, 324–325, 332
- in Egypt, 243, 324–325
- in India, 242, 325
- Nīzārīs, Nīzāriyya, 1, 3, 24, 95, 242–243,
301–302
- historiography, 6–30 *passim*, 303–310,
405–406
- distorted image, 11, 18, 19–20, 22–24,
362
- origins, 310–318
- Alamūt period (483–654/1090–1256),
3, 301, 316–402; revolt against
Saljūqs (483–511/1090–1118), 243,
313–321 *passim*, 327–331, 335–338;
consolidation (511–559/1118–1164),
338–340, 344–346, 350–358; *qiyāma*
(559–607/1164–1210), 358–367,
373–375; *satr* (607–654/1210–1256),
375–398
- Nīzārī methods of struggle, 326–329,
332, 355
- Nīzārī state described, 352–355
- and the Mongols, 382–383, 386–389
passim, 391–398
- post-Alamūt period (654/1256 to
present), 304, 403, 410–504; initial
period (654/1256 to ca. 868/1463),
405–422; Anjudān revival (ca.
868/1463 to ca. 1100/1690), 405, 418,
422–442 *passim*, Kahak and Kirmān
period (ca. 1100/1690 to 1232/1817),
456–463; modern period (ca.
1257/1841 to present), 473–504
- succession of imams, 97, 325–326,
413–415, 417–418, 423, 425
- doctrine: *see under imam; imamate;*
qiyāma; satr; categories of mankind,
365–366, 381–382, 441–442; in India
and in *ginān* literature, 385–386; of
al-da‘wa al-jadīda, 339
- da‘wa*, *see under da‘wa*
- literature, *see under literature*
- organization, 484–488, 493–494,
498–501 *passim*
- constitutions, 486–487, 498–501
- and Sufism, *see under Sufis, Sufism*
- Qāsim-Shāhī/Muhammad-Shāhī
schism, 413–414
- overthrew Musāfirids, 154

- Nizārīs, Nizāriyya (*cont.*)
plots in Fātimid Egypt, 244, 325–326,
342–343
and the Khwārazmians, 384, 386–387
against Crusaders; Nuṣayrīs, *see under*
Crusaders; Nuṣayrīs
of named areas, *see under* Ādharbayjān;
Afghanistan; Badakhshan; Central
Asia; Daylam; East Africa; India;
Pakistan; South Asia; Khurāsān;
Kirmān; Persia; Syria; Quhistān;
Transoxania; etc.
see also Assassins; Ismā‘īlīs; Khojas;
Satpanth Ismā‘īlism;
Muhammad-Shāhīs; Nizārī–Musta‘īlī
schism; Qāsim-Shāhīs
- Noah, *see* Nūḥ
non-Arab Muslims, *see* *mawālī*
Normans, 144, 202
North Africa, 2, 5, 99, 102, 115, 128, 139,
142, 157, 170, 176, 182, 201–202,
214, 221, 225, 239, 313
see also Ifrīqiya; Maghrib; Morocco
- Nott, General William, 470
- Nubia, Nubians, 182, 217
- nubuwwa* (prophecy), 63, 83–84
- Nubuwiyya, 370
- Nūḥ (Noah), 94, 97, 98, 131, 208, 226, 365
- Nūḥ I, Sāmānid *amīr*, 113
- Nukhayla, near Kūfa, 51
- Nukkārīs, Nukkāriyya, subgroup of
Ibādiyya, 145–146
- al-Nu‘mān b. Muḥammad, al-Qādī Abū
Hāniғa, Ismā‘īlī jurist and author 5,
30, 104, 162, 168–170, 177, 215–225
passim, 297
on the Mahdi’s role, 119, 164–165, 166
on the ideal *dā’ī*, 219–220
traditions compiled by, 83, 222
quotes ‘Abdān, 120–121
reports Fātimid assertion of ‘Alid
ancestry, 104
on *da‘wa*, 216–217; to Yaman, 109
eulogized by Nāṣir-i Khusraw, 205
revered by Ṭayyibī Bohras, 280, 294
works preserved by Syrian Nizārīs, 309
and Ismā‘īlī system of *fiqh*, 168–171,
214, 222, 299
- numbers, symbolic nature of, 86,
131–132, 237
- numismatic evidence, 154, 242, 247, 257,
304, 326
- nuqabā'*, *see* *naqīb*
- Nuqtawiyya, 421–422, 426, 436, 437
- nūr*, *see* light
- Nūr, in Māzandarān, 417
- Nūr ‘Alī Shāh, Ni‘mat Allāhī Sufi, 461,
462
- Nūr Allāh, grandson of Ni‘mat Allāh Walī
Kirmānī, 428
- Nūr al-Dahr (Nūr al-Dīn) ‘Alī, Nizārī
imam, 425, 437–439
- Nūr al-Dahr Khalil Allāh, Nizārī imam,
see Nūr al-Dahr (Nūr al-Dīn) ‘Alī
- Nūr al-Dīn (Nūr al-Dahr) ‘Alī, Nizārī
imam, *see* Nūr al-Dahr (Nūr al-Dīn)
‘Alī
- Nūr al-Dīn Maḥmūd b. Zangī, Zangid
ruler of Aleppo, 250–252 *passim*,
253, 254, 352, 367, 368, 369
- Nūr al-Dīn Muḥammad, Nizārī imam, *see*
Abū Dharr ‘Alī
- Nūr al-Dīn Muḥammad II b. Ḥasan ‘alā
dhikrihi l-salām, *see* Muḥammad II,
Nizārī imam
- Nūr al-Dīn Ni‘mat Allāh b. ‘Abd Allāh,
see Ni‘mat Allāh Walī Kirmānī
- Nūr al-Dīn Shāh, son of Āghā Khān II,
480
- Nūr Muḥammad Nūr al-Dīn, Dā’ūdī *dā’ī*,
285
- Nūrbakhsh, Muḥammad b. ‘Abd Allāh,
Sufi master, 427
- Nūrbakhshiyya, Sufi order, 419, 427, 435
- Nūrī, Mīrzā Āqā Khān, *see* Āqā Khān Nūrī
al-Nūrī, Mīrzā Ḥusayn, Twelver
scholar, 168
- Nuṣayrīs, Nuṣayriyya, 27, 95, 332, 348, 349
rivalry with Nizārīs, 94, 309, 353, 408,
489, 490
doctrines: *ghulāt* heritage, 67, 94;
gnostic, 94–95; of *tanāsukh*, 190, 372
- Nūshtagīn, Saljūq *amīr*, 324
- Nuṣrat al-Dawla, Fīrūz Mīrzā, Qājār
governor of Kirmān, 465
- Nuṣrat al-Dīn, lord of Zawzan, 374

- Nuṣrat al-Dīn b. Bahrāmshāh, Naṣrid *amīr* of Sīstān, 384
- Nuṣrat al-fatra*, of ‘Imād al-Dīn Muḥammad al-Kātib al-Isfahānī, 308
- al-Nuwayrī, Aḥmad b. ‘Abd al-Wahhāb, historian, 8, 25, 101
- Nuzhat al-afkār*, of Idrīs ‘Imād al-Dīn, 240
- Nuzhat al-qulūb*, of Ḥamd Allāh Mustawfī, 307
- oath of allegiance, see *bay‘a; mithāq*
- occultation, see *ghayba*
- Odo of Saint-Amand, Grand Master of the Knights Templar, 369
- Odoric of Pordenone, Franciscan friar and traveller, 19
- Ögedei, Great Khan, 388
- Oghuz Turks, 195
- Old Man of the Mountain, 11, 13, 14, 16, 18, 19, 368, 390
- Old Testament, 233
- Öljeytū (Uljāytū), Īlkhanid, 305–306, 307
- Oman, see ‘Umān
- Orestes, Melkite patriarch of Jerusalem, 177
- orientalism, 22–26, 30
- Orontes river, in Syria, 123, 335
- Ötegü-China, Mongol commander in Khurāsān, 397
- Otto I, emperor of Germany, 145
- Ottoman Turks, 10, 20, 280, 287, 296, 408, 481, 489
- Ottomans, see Ottoman Turks
- Outram, Major James, British political agent in Sind, 470
- Oxus (Āmū Daryā) river, 29, 206, 325, 373, 377, 383, 387, 391, 392, 451, 495
- Özbeg, Muẓaffar al-Dīn, Eldigüzid, 377, 386, 387
- Özbegs, 452
- Pādiz, in Daylam, 415
- Padua, in Italy, 22
- Pakistan, 207, 483, 496
- Nizārīs of, 433, 484, 488, 494, 495, 497, 503; organization, 499–500, 501
- Dā’ūdis of, 290–291
- Sulaymānīs of, 298, 299
- Ni‘mat Allāhīs of, 429
- see also Chitral; Gilgit; Hunza; Multān; Panjab; Sind
- Palermo, in Sicily, 143, 144
- Palestine, 61, 123, 163, 205, 399
- under Fātimids, 139, 175, 176, 195, 197, 221, 250
- disputed by Fātimids and Jarrāhids, 182, 192
- under Crusaders, 13, 14, 244
- Artuqids in, 243
- Pamir, region and mountains, in Central Asia, 29, 206, 408, 452, 494
- Pamiri languages, 495, 496
- Pandiyāt-i javānmardī*, of Mustansır bi’llāh II, 432–433, 445, 446, 447
- Panj river, in Transoxania, 29, 451, 495
- Panjāb, now in Pakistan, 409, 410, 443, 457
- Panjābī (language), 444
- Paradise, 134, 274
- of the Old Man in Marco Polo’s narrative, 16–17
- denied by *ghulāt*, 65
- in doctrine of Abū Mansūr, 70
- in Nizārī doctrine of the *qiyāma*, 360–361, 364, 411
- in Nuqtawī doctrine, 422
- in Satpanth Ismā‘īlism, 450
- pardah (chādur)*, 300, 488
- Paris, 27, 28, 31, 481, 504
- Pashāpūya (Fashāfūya), near Rayy, 111
- Pasikhānī, Maḥmūd, Nuqtawī leader, 422
- Pasikhāniyya, see Nuqtawiyya
- Pātan, in Gujarāt, 276, 277–278, 385, 442
- peasantry; early supporters of Ismā‘īlism, 108, 115
- Perry, Sir Erskine, 475
- Persia (Iran)
- Marco Polo in, 15–16
- Shī‘ism in, 54, 56, 420–421, 425–427, 430–431, 435–436
- later Kaysānī sects, 63, 79
- Sufism in, 420–421, 426–431
- early Ismā‘īlism in, 95, 109, 115–116, 121–122, 149, 152–155, 166
- Iranian school of philosophical Ismā‘īlism in, 167, 225–228

- Persia (Iran) (*cont.*)
- Fātimid Ismā‘īlism in, 184, 202–207, 218, 310–311
 - Ismā‘īlī ‘threat’ perceived by Nizām al-Mulk, 209
 - Ibn Mu‘āwiya in, 75
 - under Saljūqs, 195–197, 313, 316, 346
 - Nizārī–Musta‘lī schism, 324–325
 - under Khwārazmshāhs, 373–374, 383, 384, 386–388
 - Mongol conquest of, 301, 388–389, 391–397
 - under Ilkhānid and Tīmūrids, 425–426
 - Hurūfīs in, 421
 - under Ṣafawids, 430–431, 435–437
 - Afghan invasion of, 459
 - under Zand dynasty, 459–462
 - under Qājār dynasty, 459–463, 464–468
 - during Constitutional Revolution, 492–493
 - mawālī* of, 54–55
 - Nizārīs of, 3, 4, 13, 209–210, 301, 304, 320–324, 330, 403, 488; literature, 303–304, 406, 418–420, 433–434, 455; establishment of Nizārī state centred at Alamūt, 314–319, 326–330, 335–339, 344–346, 352–355; proclamation of *qiyāma* at Alamūt, 358–367, 373–374; *satr* at Alamūt, 375–398; post-Alamūt period: initial period, 410–422; Anjudān revival, 418–420, 422–425, 431–442; Kahak and Kirmān period, 456–463; modern period, 463–468, 470–472, 490–494
 - Āghā Khān I’s campaign, 465–470, 471, 473
 - Aga Khan III’s visit to, 484
 - Persian (language), 1, 21, 207, 449, 447, 480
 - adopted by Nizārīs, 302, 304, 316, 406–408, 432
 - Persian Gulf, 43, 138, 148, 201, 210, 291, 459, 468, 500
 - Persian ‘national sentiment’, 316
 - Philip II Augustus, king of France, 22
 - Philip of Montford, lord of Tyre, 402
 - philosophical Ismā‘īlism, 138, 222, 224–228, 230–231, 232, 233–234, 420
 - see also* cosmology; Neoplatonism
 - pilgrimage to Mecca, *see hajj*
 - Pipino, Francesco, of Bologna, Dominican friar and author, 13
 - pīr, 207, 405, 412, 439–441, 442, 443, 488
 - analogous with Nizārī imam, 366
 - operated as *dā‘īs* independently of Nizārī imams, 409, 432, 439, 442–443, 445, 447, 452
 - authors and subjects of *gināns*, 385, 409, 442–444, 450
 - Qāsim-Shāhī Nizārī imams as, 419, 431, 433, 434, 440
 - conversion strategy of, 448–450
 - see also murshid; qutb*
 - Pīr Muḥammad Shirwānī, Sunnī scholar, 453, 454
 - Pīrāna, near Ahmādābād, 445, 446
 - pīr-i kull, 434
 - Pīrkhān Shujā‘ al-Dīn, Dā‘ūdī dā‘ī, 283–284
 - Plato (Aflātūn), 223, 229, 237
 - Plotinus (al-Shaykh al-Yūnānī), philosopher, 223–224, 228, 229, 231, 234
 - Polo, Marco, *see* Marco Polo
 - Poona, in India, 407, 473, 476, 480
 - Poonawala, Ismail K., 32, 407, 439
 - Pope, the, 352, 390
 - Porphyry (Furfuriyūs), philosopher, 224
 - Portugal, 501
 - Pragati Mandal (Progressive Group), of Dā‘ūdī Bohras, 289
 - prayer, *see* ṣalāt
 - Privy Council Judgement, of 1947, 289
 - Proclus (Buruqlus), philosopher, 224
 - prophecy, *see* *nubuwwa*
 - prophets
 - cycle of, 69, 70, 97–98, 135
 - īlu'l-'azm*, 97, 131, 226
 - in the historical process, 231–232
 - pseudo-Aristotelian works, *see* Neoplatonism - Qā'ānī, Ḥabīb Allāh, poet, 464
 - qadar*, 134–135, 136, 230

- Qaddāhids, 101–105 *passim*, 106
 Qādī Aḥmad al-Qummī, historian, 436
 al-Qādī al-Fāḍil, Fāṭimid secretary, 255
 al-Qādī al-Nu‘mān, *see* al-Nu‘mān b. Muḥammad
qādī al-qudāt (chief *qādī*), 168, 172, 181, 187, 195, 208, 214, 252
 Qādī Rahmat Allāh b. Ghulām Muṣṭafā, Imām-Shāhī author, 444
 al-Qādir, ‘Abbāsid caliph, 101, 185
 Qādiriyya, Sufi order, 428, 444
 Qādisiyya, in ‘Irāq, 124
 Qadmūs, castle, in Syria, 12, 349–350, 368, 400, 401, 402, 456, 489, 490
 Qafṣa, in North Africa, 127
 al-Qāhir b. al-Muhtadī b. al-Hādī b. Nizār, Nizārī imam, 364
 al-Qāhira, *see* Cairo
 Qahṭaba b. Shabib, 77
 al-Qā’id b. Ḥammād, Ḥammādīd, 202
qā’im, in doctrine of pre-Fāṭimid Ismā‘īlīs, 96–97, 98, 108, 116–119, 124, 129, 132, 134
 in doctrine of Fāṭimid Ismā‘īlīs, 164–165, 208, 219, 222, 223
 in Druze doctrine, 188–189
 in Iranian school of philosophical Ismā‘īlīsm, 226–228
 in Musta‘li-Ṭayyibī doctrine, 239, 272–275
 in Nizārī doctrine of the Alamūt period, 326, 360, 363, 412
see also *imām-qā’im*; Mahdī; *qiyāma*; *qā’im al-qiyāma*
 al-Qā’im, ‘Abbāsid caliph, 194, 195, 196–197, 209, 210
 al-Qā’im, Fāṭimid caliph, 105, 106, 119, 123, 125, 140, 142–143, 144, 145–146, 156, 157, 166, 173, 211–212
qā’im al-qiyāma, 208, 272, 360–361
 Qā’im-maqām-i Farāhānī, Mīrzā Abu'l-Qāsim, Qājār chief minister, 464, 467
 Qā'in, in Quhistān, 319, 353, 378, 411, 427, 490, 493, 494
 Qajaq, Saljūq *amīr*, 357
 Qājār dynasty, of Persia, 459–460, 461, 462, 477
 chroniclers of, 408
 and Nizārīs, 405, 463–465; and Imam Abu'l-Ḥasan 'Alī, *beglerbegi*, 459–462; and Shāh Khalil Allāh (III), 27, 463; Āghā Khān I, 463–469, 473; Sardār Abu'l-Ḥasan Khān, 471–472; Aga Khan III, 481
qalam (pen), 134, 230, 270
qalandar, 412, 421
 Qal‘at Banī Hammād, in the Maghrib, 147, 180
 Qal‘at al-Sharīf, castle, in Syria, 347
 al-Qalqashandī, Aḥmad b. 'Alī, secretary in the Mamlūk chancery and author, 6, 140, 213, 247
 Qandahār, in Afghanistan, 436, 460, 468, 469–470
 Kara Qoyunlu dynasty, of Persia, 'Irāq and eastern Anatolia, 425
 Karakhānids, of Transoxania, 203, 316
 Qarāmiṭa, *see* Qarmaṭīs
 Qaraqai Bitikchi, Mongol commander, 397
 Qarmaṭīs, 2, 32, 96, 116, 210
 origin of the name, 108
 of Bahrayn, 110–111, 121, 133, 147–150, 152, 161–162, 235, 310; relations with Fāṭimids, 9, 26, 140–141, 149, 151–152, 161–167 *passim*, 185; allowed compilation of *Epistles*, 235–236
 of 'Irāq, 98–99, 107–109, 115, 116–117, 120, 124, 149–150, 166–167
 of Persia, 121, 152, 167
 of Yaman, 122
 in revolts of, 289–294/902–907, 122–124
 invasions of Syria, 173–174
 enumeration of imams, 96–97, 104–105
 series of *ūlu'l-‘azam* prophets, 97, 131
 Mahdīsm of Muḥammad b. Ismā‘īl, 97–98, 131–132, 149, 152
 as dissident Ismā‘īlīs in schism of, 286/899, 116–117, 120–121, 122–123, 164
 Qashqā'i tribesmen, of Persia, 462

- Qāsim ‘Alī, Nizārī imam, 459
 Qāsim al-Anwār, Sufi poet, 420, 422, 428, 430
 al-Qāsim b. ‘Abd al-‘Azīz b. Muḥammad b. al-Nu‘mān, Fātimid chief *dā’ī* and chief *qāḍī*, great-grandson of al-Qādī al-Nu‘mān, 172, 203
 al-Qāsim b. Aḥmad, Qarmaṭī *dā’ī*, 124
 al-Qāsim al-Manṣūr, Zaydī imam in Yaman, 296
 Qāsim Shāh, Nizārī imam, 385, 413–414, 418, 442
 Qāsimābād, village, in northern Khurāsān, 494
 Qāsimī Zaydīs, of Yaman, 199, 296–297
 Qāsim-Shāhī Nizārīs, *see* Qāsim-Shāhīs
 Qāsim-Shāhīs, Qāsimīyya, branch of Nizārīs, 32, 405, 413–414, 417–418 literature, 406, 413, 433–434
 Anjudān period, 413, 422–423, 425, 431–442 *passim*; later period, 456–463; *see further* Nizārīs: post-Alamūt period: modern period and Muḥammad-Shāhīs, 413–414, 417, 433, 451, 455–456, 490 of Syria, 489–490
see also Khojas; Nizārīs; Satpanth Ismā‘īlism
 Qaṣr-i ‘Alī, Dā’ūdī *dā’ī*s family, 294
 Qassām, assistant to Alftakīn, 175, 177
 Qaṣṭīliya, in North Africa, 127, 146
 Qatīf, in eastern Arabia, 110, 185, 210
qawl al-a’imma, 171
 Qawnaṣ (Qūnis), *dā’ī*, 262
 Qayrawān (Kairouan), 125, 126, 143, 146, 159, 162, 168, 180, 183, 201
 Abū ‘Abd Allāh al-Shī‘ī threatened, 127 in Khārijī revolt of Abū Yazīd, 146–147
 Zirid capital, 202
 Qays, Banū, of Syria, 51
 Qayṣariyya, *see* Caesarea
 Qazvīnī, Muḥammad, 103, 106, 305
 Qazwīn, in Persia, 307, 317, 319, 324, 393, 394, 396, 453
 under Saljūqs, 338
 Hasan-i Ṣabbāh at, 314
 relations with Nizārīs of Rūdbār, 346, 356, 374, 376, 387–388
 Mongol massacre of Nizārīs at, 397
 under Amīr Kiyā’ī Sayyids, 415
 Jahāngīr (Iskandarid) executed at, 417
 Nuqtawīyya of, 422
 as Ṣafawid capital, 437
 Qift, in upper Egypt, 254
qilā’ al-da’wa, Nizārī castles in Syria, 350, 408
 Qirwāsh b. al-Muqallad, ‘Uqaylid, 185
qiyāma (resurrection), 60, 120, 132, 133, 208
 in doctrines of the *ghulāt*, 65 denied by Abū Manṣūr, 70 in Tayyibī doctrine, 272–275 Nizārī doctrine of, 303, 357–361 elaboration of doctrine by Muḥammad II, 363–367, rejected by Ḥasan III, 375; revived under Muḥammad III, 378–382; Syrian, 371, 372 proclamation: at Alamūt, 358–359; at Mu’minābād, 359; in Syria, 359, 370
 for Qāsim-Shāhī Nizārīs, 412, 433, 440–442 in Nizārī *gīnāns*, 450 in Druze doctrine, 188 in Nuqtawī doctrine, 422
see also *ma’ād*; eschatology
qiyāmat al-qiyāmat (the Great Resurrection), 132, 269, 272, 381
qiyās (analogy), 171
 Qizil-bāsh, 430, 435, 437
 Qizil Sāriq, Saljūq *amīr*, 319
 Quatremère, Étienne Marc, orientalist, 24
 Qubādiyān, in Khurāsān, 205
 Qubayb, Banu'l-, of Yaman, 259
 Qubilai, Great Khan, 15
 Qūchān (Khabūshān), in Khurāsān, 393
 Quhistān (Kūhistān), region, in southeastern Khurāsān, 311, 356, 414, 427, 470, 491
 Marco Polo in, 17
 Nizārīs of, 316, 318–319, 320, 329, 336, 339, 352, 358, 376, 378, 452; libraries, 355; Saljūq attacks on, 329, 330, 336, 345, 356; against Sīstān, 345, 383–384; against Ghūrids, 374, 376; Mongol invasions, 383, 391–394 *passim*, 397, 411; post-Alamūt

Index

755

- centre, 410; Qāsim-Shāhī centre, 438,
home of Nizārī Quhistānī, 411–412
- Qulay‘a, castle, in Syria, 350, 400, 401
- Qulij Khān, Mughal governor of Gujarāt, 281
- Qūmis, region, in northern Persia
Nizārīs of, 329, 339, 342, 353, 376, 384
in Mongol invasions, 391, 397
under Saljūqs, 321, 338, 345
- Qumm, in central Persia, 111, 311, 418, 431, 437, 455, 456, 463, 464, 465
- al-Qummī, Sa‘d b. ‘Abd Allāh al-Ash‘arī, Imāmī scholar and heresiographer, 9, 59, 87, 102, 116, 117
on the Mukhammisa, 94
on the *Ismā‘iliyya al-khalīsa*, 90
on the Khaṭṭābiyya, 85, 90
on the Qarmatīs, 96–97, 98, 109
on early Ismā‘ili imams, 96–97, 117
omits mention of Ibn al-Qaddāh, 103
- Qur‘ān, 37, 39, 42, 60, 66, 70, 82, 86, 117, 126, 135, 181, 222, 227, 272, 285, 396, 477, 501
zāhir and *bātin* aspects, 83, 129
on evolution, 131–132, 133–134
understood perfectly by imam, 83
ta‘wīl of, 70, 86
in Ismā‘ili system of law, 170–171
as the last Veda, 450
- al-Qur‘ān al-nātiq*, 222
- al-Qur‘ān al-sāmit*, 222
- al-Qurashī, Muhammad b. al-Wahb, Druze *dā‘ī*, 187, 190
- Quraysh, Meccan tribe, 37, 44, 57, 240, 267
- Quraysh, ‘Uqaylid ruler of Mawṣil, 196, 204
- Qurra, Banu, 182
- qurrā’*, in early Islam, 42–43, 44, 45, 47, 51
- Qūṣ, in Egypt, 249
- quṭb* (pole), Sufi master, 427, 429, 431, 433, 461, 463, 467, 468, 477
see also *murshid*; *pīr*; *khalīfa*; *shaykh*
- Quṭbkhān Quṭb al-Dīn, Dā‘ūdī *dā‘ī*, 283
- al-Rādī, ‘Abbāsid caliph, 150, 151
- Raḍī al-Dīn II b. Tāhir, Muhammad-Shāhī Nizārī imam, 451, 452
- Raḍī al-Dīn Abu'l-Ma‘ālī, Nizārī chief *dā‘ī* in Syria, 389, 399, 400
- Raḍī al-Dīn b. Muḥammad Shāh, Muḥammad-Shāhī Nizārī imam, 451
- Raḍwā mountains, near Medina, 59
- Rafī‘ al-Dīn Ḥusayn, son of Shāh Tāhir Dakkanī, 455
- Rāfiḍa, Rawāfiḍ, 72, 206
- rafiq*, *rafiqān* (comrades), 317, 329, 358, 365
- Rafsanjān, in Kirmān, 459
- Rāḥat al-‘aql, of Ḥamīd al-Dīn al-Kirmānī, 184, 233–234, 269, 297
- Rāḥat al-ṣudūr, of al-Rāwandī, 308
- Rahba, 196
- Rahim, Prince, son of Aga Khan IV, 504
- Rahmat ‘Alī Shāh, Ni‘mat Allāhī Sufi master, 468, 477
- Rahmat Allāh b. Ḥasan Kabīr al-Dīn, 447
- raj‘a* (return), 60, 64, 65
- Rāja Jamāl al-Dīn b. Ḥasan, Mullā, 278–279, 284
- Rajasthan, in India, 276, 450
- Rājī Tāhira, wife of Shāhjī Mīrān Shāh, 447
- Ralph of Merle, Crusader knight, 352
- Ramdev Pīr, Hindu saint, 450
- Rametta, in Sicily, 145
- Ramla, in Palestine, 123, 125, 161, 162, 173, 182, 216, 244
- Rāmpūrī, Muhammad ‘Alī b. Mullā Jīwābhā’ī Rāmpūrī
- Rānikūh, in Daylam, 416
- Raqqa, in Syria, 192, 335, 367
- Raqqāda, near Qayrawān, 127, 128, 157
- Raqqāmī Khurāsānī, ‘Alī Quli b. Imām Qulī, Nizārī poet, 406
- Rāṣad, mother of the Fātimid caliph al-Mustanṣir, 193
- Rasā’il al-hikma*, scriptures of the Druzes, 189
- Rasā’il Ikhwān al-Ṣafā’*, 28, 32, 100, 203, 235–236, 265, 367
influences of different traditions and schools of thought, 236, 237
see also *Ikhwān al-Ṣafā’*
- Rasāmūj, holder of Lamasar, 324
- al-Rāshid, ‘Abbāsid caliph, 356

- al-Rashīd Aḥmad b. ‘Alī b. al-Zubayr, al-Qādī, 257
- Rashīd al-Dīn Faḍl Allāh, historian and Ḥilkhānid vizier, 6, 25, 305–306, 307, 309, 360, 380
on Ḥasan-i Ṣabbāḥ, 313; ‘tale of the three schoolfellows’, 312
on Fakhr al-Dīn al-Rāzī, 367
on al-Sijistānī, 155
on Mongol invasions, 393, 398
- Rāshid al-Dīn Sinān, Nizārī leader in Syria, 11, 13, 27, 254, 309, 313, 367–373, 389, 402
- Rasht, in Gilān, 416
- rasūl*, 97, 118
- rasūl Allāh*, 36
- Rasūlid, of Yaman, 267, 268
- Rawāfiḍ, *see* Rāfiḍa
- al-Rāwandī, Najm al-Dīn Muḥammad b. ‘Alī, historian, 308
- Rāwandiyya, 62, 79
see also Hāshimiyya, Shī‘ī group
- Rāwar, in Kirmān, 465, 469
- Rawdat al-akhbār*, of Idrīs ‘Imād al-Dīn, 240
- Rawdat al-taslīm*, of Naṣīr al-Dīn al-Tūsī, 379, 380, 381
- Rawlinson, Major Henry, British political agent in Afghanistan, 470
- Ray‘ān, in Yaman, 259
- Raydān, confidant of the Fāṭimid caliph al-Ḥākim, 180
- Raydān, mosque, Cairo, 187
- Rayḥānīs, faction in Fāṭimid army, 250
- Raymond, son of Bohemond IV, of Antioch, 389
- Raymond II of Tripoli, 352
- Raymond of Antioch, Crusader knight, 352
- Rayy, in Persia, 153, 233, 319, 320, 373, 377, 427
Ismā‘īlī *da‘wa* to, 102, 111–112, 113, 115, 152
joined dissidents in Ismā‘īlī schism of 286/899, 121
al-Sijistānī in, 112, 113, 155
- Fāṭimid *da‘wa* to, 202
- Hasan-i Ṣabbāḥ’s early career in, 311–312, 314
- Nizārīs of, 324, 329, 357; *da‘wa* to, 384
in Mongol invasions, 394
- al-Rāzī (Rhazes), Abū Bakr Muḥammad b. Zakariyyā, physician and philosopher, 112
- al-Rāzī, Abū Ḥātim, *see* Abū Ḥātim al-Rāzī
- Red Sea, 296
coast of Africa, part of Fāṭimid empire, 138, 176
trade routes through, 201, 256
- Reginald of Vichiers, Grand Master of the Knights Templar, 390
- religious dues, *see under* *dah-yik*; *dassondh*; *khums*; *najwā*; *zakāt*; *haqq al-nafs*; *haqq-i imām*; *salām*
- resurrection, *see* *qiyāma*
- Rhazes, *see* al-Rāzī, Abū Bakr
- Richard I, the Lion Heart, king of England, 372, 373
- Riḍā ‘Alī Shāh Dakkanī, Ni‘mat Allāhī Sufi master, 461
- al-riḍā min ăl Muḥammad*, 76–77, 79
- Riḍwān, Saljuq ruler of Aleppo, 325, 331–334 *passim*, 348
- Riḍwān b. Walakhshī, Fāṭimid vizier, 249
- Rīf, in North Africa, 156
- Rifā‘a, Banū, of ‘Irāq, 149
- Rīgān, in Balūchistān, 469
- Risāla*, of Abū ‘Isā al-Murshid, 133, 233
- Risāla*, of Khayrkhwāh-i Harātī, 434
- al-Risāla al-jāmi‘a*, of Ikhwān al-Ṣafā’, 236
- al-Risāla al-mudhhiba*, of al-Qādī al-Nu‘mān, 164
- al-Risāla al-Ramadāniyya*, of Tāhir Sayf al-Dīn, 290
- al-Risāla al-wā‘iza*, of Ḥamīd al-Dīn al-Kirmānī, 188
- al-Risāla al-wazīriyya*, of Ibn Killis, 177
- Riyāhiyya, subgroup of Kaysāniyya, 62
- Roger II, king of Sicily, 202, 249
- Romanus IV Diogenes, Byzantine emperor, 198
- Rome, 13
- Rousseau, Jean Baptiste L. J., French consul in Aleppo, 26–27

- Rūdbār, district in the upper Shāhrūd, in northern Persia 153, 317, 318–320 *passim*, 324, 344
- Nizārīs of, 324, 329, 339, 342, 344, 352, 358; Saljūq attacks on, 318, 319, 337, 345, 376; relations with: Caspian provinces, 357, 367, 374, 387; Khwārazmians, 374, 387; Māzandarān, 374; Qazwīn, *see under* Qazwīn; Mongol invasions: during, 391, 393–398 *passim*; post-Alamūt 410–411, 415–418
- rūḥ*, *see nafs*
- rūḥāniyyūn*, 134
see also jadd; fath; khayāl
- Rukn al-Dawla Qārin, Bāwandid, 374
- Rukn al-Dīn, son of Muḥammad Khwārazmshāh, 384
- Rukn al-Dīn b. Bahrāmshāh, Naṣrid *amīr* of Sīstān, 384
- Rukn al-Dīn Khurshāh (Khwurshāh), Nizārī imam and last lord of Alamūt, 18, 302, 304–305, 391–398 *passim*, 403, 410, 411, 446
- Rūm (Anatolia), 205, 217, 374, 384, 390, 421, 430
- Rūmanī, near Shahr-i Bābak, 468
- Ruṣāfa, castle, in Syria, 350, 368, 400, 401
- Rūshān, in Badakhshan, 29, 452, 502
- Russell, Justice Coram, 481
- Russia, 31, 495
see also Soviet Central Asia
- Rustamdār, in Daylam, 344, 367, 417
- Rustamid dynasty, of western Algeria, 127, 142
- Rustichello of Pisa, 18
- Rūyān, in Daylam, 344, 367, 374, 387
- Ruzzik b. Ṭalā'i, Fātimid vizier, 251
- Sa‘ādatkūh, castle, in Daylam, 345, 356
- Saba' b. Abū'l-Su‘ūd, Zuray‘id, 256–257
- Saba' b. Yūsuf, Ya‘burī chief in Yaman, 266
- Sabaeans (Ṣābi'a), 227
- Saba'iyya, 63–64
- Ṣābi'a, *see* Sabaeans; Mandaeans
- al-sābiq* (the preceder), 134, 190
- sābiqa, 42, 43, 134, 229, 230
- Sab'iyya (Seveners), 97
- Sabta (Ceuta), in the Maghrib, 142, 156
- Sābūr (Shāpūr), son of Abū Ṭāhir al-Jannābī, 151, 161
- Sabz ‘Alī, pīr, 495, 496
- Sa‘d al-Dawla, Ḥamdānid *amīr* of Aleppo, 175
- Şa‘da, in Yaman, 198, 259
- al-sāda al-ru’asā'*, Qarmaṭī leaders in Bahrayn, 161
- Şadaqa b. Yūsuf, Fātimid vizier, 193
- al-Şādiq, imam, *see* Ja‘far al-Şādiq
- Şādiq Khān Zand, 460
- Şadr al-Dīn, Nizārī envoy of Rukn al-Dīn Khurshāh, 393
- Şadr al-Dīn, pīr, 443, 445, 450, 476
- Şadr al-Dīn (Sadruddin), Prince, son of Aga Khan III, 483
- Şadr al-Dīn, Ṣafawid *shaykh*, 430
- Şadr al-Dīn ‘Alī b. Nāṣir al-Husaynī, historian, 308
- Şadr al-Dīn Muḥammad b. Haydar, Muḥammad-Shāhī Nizārī imam, 455
- Şafad, in Syria, 255, 261
- Safar-nāma*, of Nāṣir-i Khusraw, 28, 205, 206
- Safar-nāma*, of Nizārī Quhistānī, 411, 412
- Şafawid dynasty, of Persia, 279, 415, 417, 422, 425, 426, 427, 429–430, 452–459 *passim*
- established Twelver Shī‘ism as state religion, 420–421, 426, 430–431, 435 religious policy, 435–437 and Nizām-Shāhī state, 454–455 seized Gilān, 417 persecuted Sufis and extremist Shī‘is, 435
- Şafawiyya, Sufi order, 427, 430–431
- Şafdar Khān, *mīr* of Hunza, 495–496
- al-Saffāḥ, Abū'l-‘Abbās, ‘Abbāsid caliph, 75, 77–78, 79
- Şaffārids, of Sīstān and eastern Afghanistan, 114, 139, 155, 316
- Şafi ‘Alī Shāh, Ni‘mat Allāhī Sufi master, 477–479
- Şafi al-Dīn, Ṣafawid *shaykh*, 430

- Şafî al-Dîn Muhammâd b. al-Fahd
al-Makramî, Sulaymânî
author, 295–296
- Safîdrûd river, in Daylam, 153, 324, 415
- şâhâba*, *see* Companions of the Prophet
- şâhib al-da‘wa*, 294
- Şâhib Fakhkh, *see* al-Husayn b. ‘Alî, Şâhib Fakhkh
- şâhib al-haqqa*, 101
- şâhib al-khâl*, *see* al-Husayn, son of Zikrawayh
- şâhib al-nâqâ*, *see* Yahyâ, son of Zikrawayh
- şâhib al-shâma*, *see* al-Husayn, son of Zikrawayh
- Sâ‘îd, *see* al-Mahdî, ‘Abd Allâh, first Fâtimid caliph
- Sâ‘îd, in Egypt, 193–194
- Sâ‘îd b. ‘Abd Allâh al-Hanâfi, 50
- Sâ‘îd b. Badî‘, *ra’is* of Aleppo, 334, 347
- Sâ‘îd b. al-Husayn, *see* al-Mahdî, ‘Abd Allâh, first Fâtimid caliph
- Sâ‘îd al-Dawla, Hâmdânid *amîr* of Aleppo, 176, 183
- Sâ‘îd Khân, son of Nar Muhammâd, 446
- St Catherine, monastery, in Mount Sinai, 246
- St Louis, king of France, *see* Louis IX
- St Mercurius, church, near Fustât, 177
- St Petersburg, 29
- Sajids (Bânu Saj), of Âdharbayjân, 153
- sâjjâda-nishîn*, 446, 453, 455
- Saladin (Şâlâh al-Dîn), founder of the Ayyûbid dynasty, 251–255 *passim*, 309, 368–369, 370, 372, 373, 389
- Şâlâh al-Dîn, pîr, 385
- Şâlâh al-Dîn ‘Alî, Nizârî envoy to Khwârazmshâh, 386
- Şâlâh al-Dîn Hasan-i Mahmûd, Nizârî author, 380
- Şâlâh al-Dîn Yûsuf, Ayyûbid, *see* Saladin
- salâm*, 294
- Salâma b. ‘Abd al-Wâhhâb al-Sâmurî, Druze leader, 187, 190
- Salamiyya, in central Syria, 5, 100, 102, 107, 116, 117, 119, 123, 145, 332, 489–490, 496
- Şâlârids, *see* Musâfirids
- şalât* (ritual prayer), 169, 294, 442
- Salerno, in Italy, 144
- Şâlih b. Mirdâs, Kilâbid, 183, 192
- Şâlih b. Mudrik, 62
- Salîm Khân, *mîr* of Hunza, 495
- Saljûq-nâma*, attributed to Zâhir al-Dîn Nîshâpûrî, 308
- Saljûqs, 9, 10, 139, 195–196, 197, 204, 209, 310–311, 313, 316, 320, 338, 346, 373, 384
- realm, Nizârî–Mustâ‘lî schism in, 324–325
- histories of Nizârîs, 308
- against Nizârîs, 301, 318–319, 327–330, 335–338, 344–346, 397
- Sallârids, *see* Musâfirids
- Salmân al-Fârisî, 39, 92, 94, 365
- salvation, *see* eschatology; soteriology
- Sâm (Shem), 132
- Sâm Mirzâ, Şâfawid author, 455
- Şamad Shâh, son of Mûchûl Shâh and Hâjjî Bîbî, 481, 491
- Sâmânids, of Khurâsân and Transoxania, 112–113, 155, 202, 203, 316
- Samaritan gnosticism, 135
- Samarqand, in Central Asia (now in Uzbekistan), 203, 383, 392, 421, 428
- Samâwa, desert, 122
- şâmit*
- in doctrine of Abu'l-Khaṭṭâb, 86
 - in Imâmî doctrine, 83
 - in Ismâ‘îlî doctrine, 132
- Sammas, of Sind, 443
- Şâmsâm al-Dawla, Büyid, 235
- Şan‘â’ 28, 110, 122, 126, 198, 199, 238, 255, 257–260 *passim*, 265, 266
- Sanâ‘î, poet, 420
- Şanhâja (Şinhâja), Berbers, 141, 145, 156–157, 162, 179, 183
- Sanjar, Saljûq sultan, 320, 321, 335, 338, 340, 345, 346, 357, 373
- relations with Nizârîs, 329, 330, 336, 342, 345–346, 357
- Sanskrit (language), 409, 443, 474
- Sanudo Torsello, Marino, historian, 13
- Saoshyant, Zoroastrian saviour, 60
- Şaqâlibâ, *see* Slavs
- Saracens, 15, 20

Index

759

- Sarandib (Ceylon), 271
see also Sri Lanka
- Sarbadārs, of Khurāsān, 426
- Sarbīsha, in Persia, 469
- Sardār Abu'l-Ḥasan Khān, brother of Āghā Khān I, *see* Abu'l-Ḥasan Khān
- Sardinia, 144
- Sargudhasht-i Sayyidnā*, of Ḥasan-i Ṣabbāḥ, 304, 305, 311–312
- Sārī, in Māzandarān, 417
- Sārim al-Dīn Mubārak b. Raḍī al-Dīn, Nizārī *dā'i* in Syria, 400–401
- Sarmīn, in northern Syria, 333, 335
- Sartakht, fortress, in Quhistān, 393
- Sarūj, 192
- Sarv-i Jahān Khānum, Qājār princess, mother of Āghā Khān II, 464, 477
- Sāsānids, Sāsānid empire, 42, 43, 55, 78, 79
- Satgur Nūr, *pīr*, 385, 442
- Saṭīf, in North Africa, 126
- Satpanth Ismā'īlism, 32, 442–445, 446, 447, 448–450, 474
see further *ginān*; Khojas; Nizārīs
- Satpanthīs, *see* Imām-Shāhīs
- satr* (concealment), 441
 Nizārī doctrine of, 378, 380–382, 436
see also *dawr al-satr*
- Saudi Arabia, 297–298
- Sa'ūdīs, *see* Āl Sa'ūd
- Sāwa, near Qumm, 337, 338, 387, 416
- Sawād, of Kūfa, 42, 99, 107, 109, 115, 124, 149, 311
- sawm* (fasting), 169, 288, 442
- Saydā, *see* Sidon
- Sayf al-Dawla Ṣadaqa, Mazyadid, 335
- Sayf al-Dīn Muhammad, Ghūrid, 356
- Sayf al-Dīn Sultān Malik b. Kiyā Bū Mansūr b. Muḥammad II, Nizārī envoy, 394
- Sayf al-Mulk b. 'Amrūn, lord of Kahf, 349, 350
- Sayfi Dars (Jāmi'a Sayfiyya), Sūrat, 286, 287, 290, 292, 293, 294
- Sayfi Masjid, Dā'ūdī mosque, Bombay, 290
- Sayr va sulūk*, of Naṣīr al-Dīn al-Ṭūsī, 379
- Sayyid, Ayman F., 239
- Sayyid Abu'l-Ḥasan Kahakī, Nizārī imam, *see* Abu'l-Ḥasan 'Alī, *beglerbegi*
- Sayyid 'Alī, Nizārī imam, 458–459
- Sayyid 'Alī Kiyā b. Amīr Kiyā Malātī, founder of the Caspian Zaydī dynasty of Amīr Kiyā'i Sayyids, 415–416, 417
- Sayyid Fādil Shāh, ancestor of Kadiwala Sayyids, 448
- Sayyid Ḥasan Beg, Nizārī imam, *see* Ḥasan 'Alī
- al-Sayyid al-Ḥimyarī, poet, 60
- Sayyid Ja'far, Nizārī imam, *see* Qāsim 'Alī
- Sayyid Ja'far Shīrāzī, *see* Ja'far, Sayyid
- Sayyid Mahdī Kiyā b. Amīr Kiyā Malātī, 416
- Sayyid Radī Kiyā b. Sayyid 'Alī Kiyā, ruler of Lāhijān, 417
- Sayyid Sa'īd b. Sultān, Āl Bū Sa'īdī sultan of 'Umān and Zanzibar, 291, 486
- Sayyid Shāh Khāmūsh, Ḥasan, Nizārī *dā'i* in Badakhshan, 452
- Sayyid Shāh Malang, Nizārī *dā'i* in Badakhshan, 452
- Sayyid al-Tā'ifa (Bahr al-'Ulūm), Muḥammad al-Mahdī al-Ṭabāṭabā'i, Twelver scholar, 168
- al-Sayyida Ḥurra bint Aḥmad al-Ṣulayḥī, *see* Arwā
- Sayyidnā Ḥasan-i Ṣabbāḥ, *see* Ḥasan-i Ṣabbāḥ
 'school of Iṣfahān', 420
- scriptures, symbolic interpretation of, *see* *ta'wīl*
- Semenov, Aleksandr Aleksandrovich, 29, 30, 31
- Seraphiel, *see* Isrāfil
- Seth, *see* Shīth
- Seven-day Prayers* (*Ad'iyat al-ayyām al-sab'a*), of the Fātimid caliph al-Mu'izz, 165
- Severus, bishop of Ashmūnayn, 177
- Seville (Ishbiliya), 159
- al-Shabānkāra'i, Muḥammad b. 'Alī, historian, 307
- Shabistar, in Ādharbajān, 419
- Shādhī al-Khādim, 349
- Shāfi'i Sunnism, 172, 252, 376, 426, 430, 456

- Shafūrqān, near Balkh, 392
 Shāh ‘Ālam II, Mughal emperor, 286
 Shāh Bibī, daughter of Shāh Khalīl Allāh (III), 464
 Shāh Ghārīb, Nizārī imam, *see* Gharīb Mīrzā
 Shāh Ghāzī Rustam I b. ‘Alā’ al-Dawla ‘Alī, Bāwandid, 344–345, 357
 Shāh Ghāzī Rustam II, Shams al-Mulūk, Bāwandid, 374
 Shāh Ja‘far, brother of Shāh Tāhir Dakkanī, 454
 Shāh Jahān, Mughal emperor, 283
 Shāh Karīm al-Husaynī, *see* Aga Khan IV
 Shāh Khalil Allāh, son of Ni‘mat Allāh Wali, *see* Khalil Allāh
 Shāh Khalil Allāh II, Nizārī imam, 425, 439, 456
 Shāh Khalil Allāh III, Nizārī imam, 27, 462–463, 472
 Shāh Ni‘mat Allāh Wali, *see* Ni‘mat Allāh Wali Kirmānī
 Shāh Nizār II, Nizārī imam, 439, 456–458
 Shāh Qalandar, Nizārī imam, *see* Mustanṣir bīllāh II
 Shāh Radī al-Dīn, Muhammad-Shāhī Nizārī leader, *see* Radī al-Dīn II
 Shāh Sayyid Nāṣir, *see* Nāṣir-i Khusrāw
 Shāh Shujā‘al-Mulk, Durrānī ruler of Afghanistan, 470
 Shāh Tāhir Dakkanī (Shāh Tāhir b. Radī al-Dīn II al-Ḥusaynī Dakkanī), Muhammad-Shāhī Nizārī imam, 413, 414, 419, 435, 451–455 *passim*
 Shāh Taqī, village, in northern Khurāsān, 494
 Shahanshāh, fortress, near Nih, 384
 Shahanshāh b. ‘Alā’ al-Dīn Muḥammad III, 393–394
 Shāhdīz, fortress, in Qūmis, 391
 Shāhdīz (Dizkūh), fortress, near Isfahān, 330, 336–337
 Shāhjī Mīrān Shāh, Imām-Shāhī leader, 446–447
 al-Shahrastānī, Muḥammad b. ‘Abd al-Karīm, heresiographer and Ash‘arī theologian, 59, 90, 118, 304, 340–342, 379, 380
 Shahr-i Bābak, in Kirmān, 423, 459–462 *passim*, 468, 473, 494
 Shahriyārkūh, in Māzandarān, 314
 Shahrnūsh b. Hazārasf b. Namāwar, Bādūspānid, 345
 Shāhrūd river, in Daylam, 153, 317, 324
 Shāhrukh, Afshārid, 459
 Shāhrukh, Tīmūrid, 308, 422, 425, 427, 428, 429
 Shahzāda Begum, daughter of Jangī Shāh, first wife of Aga Khan III, 481
 Shām, *see* Syria
 Shamir b. Dhi'l-Jawshan, 53
 Shamīrān, castle, in Ṭārum, 153–154, 205, 415
 Shams al-Dīn, Āqā, son of Jangī Shāh, 480
 Shams al-Dīn, grandson of Ni‘mat Allāh Wali Kirmānī, 429
 Shams al-Dīn, Nizārī *muhtasham* in Quhistān, 383–384, 388
 Shams al-Dīn, pīr, 385, 442–443, 450
 Shams al-Dīn, qādī of Qazwīn, 388
 Shams al-Dīn ‘Alī, ‘Alawī dā‘ī, 282
 Shams al-Dīn ‘Alī, Mihrabānid, 411–412
 Shams al-Dīn b. Najm al-Dīn Ismā‘īl, Nizārī dā‘ī in Syria, 400, 401
 Shams al-Dīn Gilakī, Nizārī vizier to Rukn al-Dīn Khurshāh, 394
 Shams al-Dīn Muḥammad, Nizārī imam, 385, 411–412, 413–414, 418, 419
 Shams al-Dīn Muḥammad I, Kart ruler of Harāt, 393, 411
 Shams al-Dīn Muḥammad b. Yahyā Lāhījī, *see* Lāhījī, Shams al-Dīn Muḥammad
 Shams al-Dīn Muḥammad Tabrīzī, spiritual guide of Jalāl al-Dīn Rūmī, 385, 413, 442
 Shams al-Mulūk, Qājār princess, mother of Aga Khan III, 480
 Shams-i Dīn Nīmrūz ‘Alī, *see* Shams al-Dīn ‘Alī, Mihrabānid
 Shams-i Tabrīz, *see* Shams al-Dīn Muḥammad Tabrīzī
 Shamsīs, Nizārī community in Panjab, 442–443
 Sham‘ūn al-Ṣafā’ (Simon Peter), 132
 Sharaf, Tāhā A., 151
 Sharaf al-Dīn al-Ḥusayn b. Aḥmad al-Makramī, Sulaymānī dā‘ī, 297

- Sharaf al-Dīn Muḥammad, son of *rā’īs*
 Muẓaffar, commandant of
 Girdkūh, 321
- Sharaf al-Ma’āli, son of al-Afḍal, 244
- Sharaf al-Mulk, vizier to Jalāl al-Dīn
 Khwārazmshāh, 386–387
- Sharḥ al-akhbār*, of al-Qādī
 al-Nu‘mān, 119, 222
- Sharḥ al-masā’il*, of Ḥusām al-Dīn al-Hajj
 Ghulām Ḥusayn, 297
- Sharḥ-i gulshan-i rāz*, of Shāh Ṭahir
 Dakkanī, 419
- shari‘a* (religious law), 10
 in pre-Fāṭimid Ismā‘īli doctrine, 97–98, 131–132
 in Fāṭimid writings, 167, 209, 222
 in Iranian school of philosophical
 Ismā‘īlism, 226–227
 in Nizārī doctrine, 364, 433, 441–442
- shari‘a*, sacred law of Islam, 40, 83, 126,
 164, 287, 288, 420, 422
 not observed by *ghulāt*, 66
 understood perfectly by imam, 83
 in pre-Fāṭimid Ismā‘īli doctrine, 98,
 129, 130–131
 in Druze doctrine, 188–189
 in Ismā‘īli system of law, 214
 in Nizārī doctrine of the Alamūt
 period, 336, 358–362, 366, 375, 378,
 380–381, 382–389, 410
 in Qāsim-Shāhī Nizārī teaching, 441
- al-Sharīf al-Murtaqā, ‘Alam al-Hudā,
 Imāmī theologian, 185
- al-Sharīf al-Rāḍī, Imāmī theologian,
 185
- Sharīk b. Shaykh al-Mahrī (al-Mahdī),
 leader of Shī‘ī revolt, 79
- al-Shawāhid wa'l-bayān*, of Ja‘far b.
 Maṇṣūr al-Yaman, 165
- Shāwar, Fāṭimid vizier, 251–252, 253
- al-Shāwirī, ‘Abd Allāh b. ‘Abbās, Ismā‘īlī
dā’ī in Yaman, 166, 198
- Shāyasta Khān, Mughal governor of
 Gujarāt, 283
- shaykh* (plural, *mashāiykh*), 19, 59, 60, 72,
 122, 145, 405, 432
 in Druze community, 190
 for Dā’ūdīs, 287, 292
 for Sulaymānīs, 298
- for Sufis, 366, 388, 427, 428–430 *passim*
 Nizārī imams as, 418–420, 431
- Shaykh Ādam Ṣafi al-Dīn, Dā’ūdī *dā’ī*, 282
- Shaykh al-Jabal*, *see* Old Man of the
 Mountain
- Shaykh Jīwanjī Awrangābādī, ancestor of
 some Dā’ūdī *dā’īs*, 287
- Shaykh al-Tā’ifa, *see* al-Ṭūsī, Abū Ja‘far
 Muḥammad
- al-Shaykh al-Yūnānī, *see* Plotinus
- al-Shayyāl, Jamāl al-Dīn, 32
- Shayzar, castle, in central Syria, 335, 350
- Sheil, Justin, British minister in
 Tehran, 472
- Shem, *see* Sām
- Shī‘a, *see* Shī‘īs, Shī‘ism
- Shī‘āf (or Sha‘āf), in Ḥarāz, 265
- Shī‘at ‘Alī, *see* Shī‘īs, Shī‘ism
- Shī‘at al-Mahdī, 53
- Shī‘at Mu‘āwiya, 46
- Shī‘at ‘Uthmān, 46
- Shibām, mountain and fortress, in
 Ḥarāz, 259, 266, 268
- shifting identities, 450–451
- Shihāb al-Dīn, Nizārī *muhtasham* in
 Quhistān, 383, 388
- Shihāb al-Dīn, *pīr*, 443
- Shihāb al-Dīn b. al-‘Ajamī, Zangid
 vizier, 370
- Shihāb al-Dīn b. Ḥarb, Naṣrid *amīr* of
 Sīstān, 384
- Shihāb al-Dīn Maḥmūd b. Takash,
 governor of Hamā, 370
- Shihāb al-Dīn Muḥammad, Ghūrid, 374
- Shihāb al-Dīn Shāh al-Ḥusaynī, *pīr*, son
 of Ḵāqānī Khān II, Nizārī author, 407,
 480
- Shī‘īs, Shī‘ism, 1, 2, 7, 34–35, 204
 origins of (in Shī‘ī view), 36–38, 39–40,
 41
- early development, 41–60
- Arab, unified phase, 46–51
- revolt of al-Mukhtār, 52–56
- period of fragmentation (al-Mukhtār
 to ‘Abbāsid revolution), 57–71;
 radical branch, 59–67, 69–70, 75–78;
 moderate branch, 57, 67–69, 71–80
passim; Zaydiyya, 72–74
- repressed by ‘Abbāsids, 78–81

- Shī‘īs, Shī‘ism (*cont.*)
 during imamate of Ja‘far al-Ṣādiq, 71–80 *passim*; in pre-Fātimid North Africa, 126
 (Fātimid) caliphate established, 127–128, 137
 in Egypt, 158
 of ‘Irāq, attracted to Fātimid Ismā‘īlism, 184–185
 in Ifrīqiya, persecuted by Sunnīs, 183, 201
 suppressed in Gujarāt, 277
 persecuted by Awrangzīb, 283–284, 456
 as state religion of Ṣafawid Persia, 425–426, 430–431, 435; radicals persecuted by Ṣafawids, 435–437
 adopted by Yūsuf ‘Ādil Shāh and Burhān I Niẓām Shāh, 453–454
 Sufism and, 420–421, 425–426, 427
 and dissident Nizārī Khojas in Aga Khan Case, 475–476
 conception of religious authority, 35, 39–40
 devotion to ‘Alī, 46–47, 425, 427
 hereditary sanctity of the Prophet’s family, 37, 39–41, 57–58
 definition of *ahl al-bayt*, 37–38, 40–41, 57–58, 81, 82–83
 significance of Fātimid ancestry for, 82–83
 tradition of *hadīth*, 69–80
 significance of *naṣṣ* imamate, 81–82
 and *taqiyya*, 68, 82, 83
 imam’s role in, 39–40, 83, 364–365
 use of the term *hujja*, 83, 117–118
 martyrology, 49, 50
 eschatology, 59–60
 doctrine of *ta‘līm*, 40, 82, 313, 340–342
 system of law, 68–69, 80, 170–171
 ceremonies under Fātimids, 177–178
mawlā Shī‘ism, 58, 79
 contribution of *ghulāt* to, 63, 66
 and Mu‘tazilis, 73
 popular motifs in Syrian Nizārī doctrine of *qiyyāma*, 371–372
mawālī: their effect on Shī‘ism, 55–56, 76; deserted revolutionary Shī‘ism, 78
 elitism among, 70
see also imamate; Imāmīs; Ismā‘īlis; Nuşayrīs; Qārmaṭīs; Twelvers; Zaydīs Shīrānshāh b. ‘Alā’ al-Dīn Muḥammad III, 394
 Shīrāz, in Fārs, 203, 422, 427, 461, 462, 465, 477
 Shīrgīr, Anūshtagīn, Saljūq *amīr*, 337–338, 342, 345
 Shīrkūh, Asad al-Dīn, Zangid general and Fātimid vizier, 251–252
 Shīrkūh, fortress, near Alamūt, 392
 Shīrwānī, Zayn al-‘Ābidīn, Mast ‘Alī Shāh, Ni‘mat Allāhī Sufi master, 463, 465–468
 Shīth (Seth), 132
 Shughnān, in Badakhshan, 29, 95, 408, 452, 502
 Shujā‘al-Saltana, pretender to the Qajār throne, 464
 Shumayṭīyya, subgroup of Imāmiyya, 88
shūrā (consultative council), 37, 41
 Shurāt, early Khārijīs, 46
 al-Shūshtārī, Nūr Allāh, Qādī, Twelver scholar and jurist, 168, 281
 Sibṭ Ibn al-Jawzī, historian, 309
 Sicily (Ṣiqilliyā), 138, 143–144, 162, 202, 390
 Siddharāja Jayasingha, Rājpūt Hindu king of Gujarat, 276, 385
 Sidhpūr, in Gujarat, 269, 277, 279, 291
 Sidih, village, in southern Khurāsān, 490–491
 Sidon (Saydā), 244, 313, 369
 Ṣidq ‘Alī Shāh, *see* Muḥammad Ṣādiq Maḥallātī
 Siffin, battle of, 43, 45–46, 47, 49
sijill, 140, 245, 247
 Sijilmāsa, 125–126, 127, 128, 142, 156, 157
 Sijistān, *see* Sīstān
 al-Sijistānī, Abū Ya‘qūb Ishāq b. Aḥmad, Ismā‘īlī *dā‘ī* and author, 112, 113, 138, 154–155, 166
 provides evidence of pre-Fātimid cosmology, 133–135
 as member of Iranian school of philosophical Ismā‘īlism, 225–228 *passim*, 229, 230–231, 233

- sijjīn*, 275
al-Sijzī, *see al-Sijistānī*
silsila, chain of spiritual masters in Sufism, 426
 Silvestre de Sacy, Antoine Isaac, orientalist, 22–24, 25, 26, 27
al-Sim‘ānī, *see Assemani*
 Simla, in India, 482
 Simnān, in Persia, 394
 Simon Peter, *see Sham‘ūn al-Šafā’*
al-Šīn, *see China*
 Sinān b. Salmān (or Sulaymān) b. Muḥammad Abu'l-Hasan al-Baṣrī, Nizārī leader in Syria, *see Rāshid al-Dīn Sinān*
 Sinān b. Sulaymān, Kalbid, 192
 Sind, now in Pakistan, 104, 279, 298, 442, 445, 463
Ismā‘īlī da‘wa to, 99, 110, 116, 164, 220, 266
 Fātimid suzerainty acknowledged in, 166–167
jazīra of, 218, 298
 and Maḥmūd of Ghazna, 200
 Nizārīs in, 385–386, 409, 410, 449; Qāsim-Shāhīs, 436, 442–451 *passim* 457; Āghā Khān I in, 470–472; Āghā Khān II visited, British conquest of, 470–472
see also Pakistan
 Sindhi (language), 432, 444, 445, 457
śinf (guild), *see* guilds
 Singapore, 501
Sinhāja, *see* Ṣanhāja
 Sinjār, 196
 Sinkiang (Xinjiang), region, in China, 496
Ṣiqilliyya, *see* Sicily
Sīra, of Jawdhar, 6, 172
Sīra, of al-Mu‘ayyad fi'l-Dīn al-Shīrāzī, 6, 203
 Sirāf, port on Persian Gulf, 148
 Sirāj al-Dīn Mużaffar b. al-Husayn, Nizārī chief *dā‘ī* in Syria, 389
 Siraj al-Dīn Najm b. Ja‘far, Fātimid chief *dā‘ī* and chief *qādī*, 253
 Sirjān, in Kirmān, 457, 459, 460, 461, 462, 468, 469, 494
 Sīstān (Arabic, Sijistān; also called Nīmrūz), in eastern Persia, 113, 153, 353, 383–384, 452
Ismā‘īlī da‘wa to, 113
 supported Fātimid cause, 166
 relations with Nizārīs of Quhistān, 319, 345, 374, 383–384, 411
 Sitt al-Mulk, sister of Fātimid caliph al-Ḥākim, 191–192
Siyāhchashm, *see* Mahdī b. Khusraw Fīrūz
Siyāsat-nāma, of Nīzām al-Mulk, 9, 209
 slaves' revolt, *see* Zanj
 Slavs (Šaqāliba), 156, 217
 Société Asiatique, Paris, 23, 27, 28
 socio-economic conditions, 486, 493, 500, 502
 for early Ismā‘īlī, 114–115
 leading to early support for Shī‘ism, 54–57
 under ‘Abbāsids, 78–79, 114–115
 in Qarmaṭī state of Bahrayn, 110–111
see also *mawālī*
 soteriology
 in doctrine of early Ismā‘īlīs, 135
 in Iranian school of philosophical Ismā‘īlīsm, 231–232, 234
 in doctrine of Ṭayyibīs, 271, 273–275
see also eschatology; *qiyāma*
 soul, *see* *nafs*
 South Asia, 3, 4, 7, 30, 290, 298, 299, 300, 403, 408, 442–451, 484, 494, 497
see also India; Pakistan; Sind; etc.
 Southern, Richard W., 11
 Soviet Central Asia, 408, 455, 495, 502
see also Central Asia; Transoxania
 Spain, 157, 159
see also al-Andalus
 Sri Lanka (Ceylon), 291
see also Sarandib
 Stern, Samuel Miklos, 32, 106, 133, 235
 Stroeva, Lyudmila V., 31, 310
 Strothmann, Rudolf, 31
Subḥ al-a‘shā’, of al-Qalqashandī, 6, 140
 Sūdānīs, 193–194
al-Ṣufāt (the Pure), 372

Sufis, Sufism, 148, 426–431, 449, 501
 role in spreading Shi‘ism in Persia, 420–421, 426–427
 suppressed by Safawids, 435, 437
 analogies with Nizārī teaching, 361, 366, 382
 Nizārī association with, 388, 404, 406, 407, 418–420, 425, 431–433, 444, 456–457, 461–462, 465, 477, 504; Nizārī imams disguised as Sufi *pīrs*, 412, 418, 419, 431–432, 435, 437
 and Twelver Shi‘ism, 420–421
 and Satpanth, 444
 Shāh Ṭāhir as, 454
 in poetry of Nizārī Quhistānī, 412–413
 Sufriyya, subgroup of Khārijīs, 145
 Suhrāb Khān, Qājār commander, 465
 Suhrawardiyya, Sufi order, 444
 Sukayn, Druze leader, 188–189
 Sukmān, Artuqid ruler of Palestine, 243
 Sulayhids, of Yaman, 3, 138, 198–201, 203, 210, 243, 255–258, 262–263, 264, 277 historiography, 239–241
 supported Ṭāyyibīs, 238, 246, 262–263
 Sulaym, Banū, 201
 Sulaymān, son of the Fātimid caliph al-Ḥāfiẓ, 248–249
 Sulaymān b. ‘Abd al-Malik, Umayyad caliph, 61, 62, 71
 Sulaymān b. Dā’ud b. al-‘Ādīd, Badr al-Dīn, Ḥāfiẓī imam, 254
 Sulaymān b. Ḥasan, Sulaymānī *dā’ī*, 281–282, 295, 296
 Sulaymān b. al-Ḥasan b. Abī'l-Ḥifāz, 264
 Sulaymān b. Ḥaydar, Shaykh, Nizārī leader at Maṣyāf, 489
 Sulaymān b. Ja‘far b. Falāḥ, 179
 Sulaymān b. Kathīr, 76, 79
 Sulaymān b. Ṣurad al-Khuza‘ī, 49, 51
 Sulaymānīs, Sulaymāniyya, branch of Ṭāyyibīs, 30, 241, 276, 281–282, 295–300
fīqh, 169, 280, 294–295
da‘wa organization, 298–299
 schism with Dā’udīs, 3, 239, 280–282, 298–299
 Sulaymānshāh, Saljuq sultan, 338
Sullam al-najāt, of Abū Ya‘qūb al-Sijistānī, 231–232

Sulṭān ‘Alī, Ṣafawid *shaykh*, 430
 Sulṭān Khwārazmshāh, *see* ‘Alā’ al-Dīn Muḥammad
 Sulṭān Muḥammad Shāh, Aga Khan III, *see* Aga Khan III
 Sulṭānābād, *see* Arāk
 Sulṭāniyya, in northwestern Persia, 416, 417, 451, 453
 Sultans of Delhi, 277
see further Khaljī dynasty; Mu‘izzī dynasty; Tughluqid dynasty
 Sūmras, of Sind, 167, 443
sunna, 37, 48, 68, 170–171
 Sunnīs, Sunnism, 2, 34–35, 340–341
 origin of name, 48
 hostility to the *ghulāt*, 63, 66
 respect for Ja‘far al-Ṣādiq, 80–81
 and Zaydīs, 74
 ‘Abbāsid support for, 78–79
 view of chief offence of Shi‘is, 66
 failure to absorb Shi‘ism, 82
 system of *fīqh*, 170
 anti-Ismā‘īlī accounts, 7–10, 99
 failed to distinguish early Ismā‘īlī groups, 152
 and history of Fātimids, 139–140
 on Nizārī declaration of the *qiyyāma*, 362, 367
 persecuted Shi‘is in Ifrīqiya, 182–183, 201
 persecuted Ismā‘īlī Bohras in India, 283–285, 286
 massacres of Nizārīs, 329, 374
 Jalāl al-Dīn Ḥasan III’s rapprochement with, 375–377, 389
 Nizārī alliances with, 375–376, 404, 504
 and Sufism, 425–426, 427, 428
 ‘Shī‘itization’ of, 426, 429–430
 opposed Fātimids in North Africa, 141
 in Khārijī Berber revolt, 145–146
 in Egypt, 159–161, 177, 181, 192, 252–253, 261
 in Ṣafawid Persia, 435–436
 of Syria, 331–332
 institute at Fusṭāṭ, 181
 championed by Saljuqs, 195–196
 Zuray‘id territories reverted to, 257
 Ismā‘īlī Bohras converted to, 277–279, 283, 285, 290, 299

Index

765

- Khojas as, 474–476, 484, 488
 Imām-Shāhīs as, 446–447
 Mōmnas as, 448
 and Nāṣir-i Khusraw, 205, 206–207
see also Ahl al-Sunna wa'l-Jamā'a; Jamā'a
 Sunqur, holder of Maṣyāf, 350
 Ṣūr, *see* Tyre
al-ṣūra al-nūrāniyya, 273
 Sūrat, in Gujarāt, 33, 241, 286, 287, 291, 292, 294, 442, 472, 485
 al-Ṣūrī, Muḥammad b. ‘Alī, Ismā‘īlī *dā’ī* and author in Syria, 208
 Surūr, Muḥammad J., 32
 Sūsa, in North Africa, 147
 Switzerland, 482–483, 496
 symbolic exegesis, *see* *ta’wīl*
 Syria, 3, 4, 12, 22, 45, 204, 313, 430 histories of, 309–310
 Ismā‘īlī libraries, 30, 32
 versus ‘Irāq, 44, 46, 77–78
 opposed ‘Alī, 44–46
 as Umayyad rule collapsed, 75
 Ismā‘īlī *da’wa* in, 5, 99, 221
 Qarmaṭī revolts of, 289–294/902–907, 122–123
 under Ṭūlūnids, 123–124
 disputed by Fātimids and Qarmatīs, 161–162, 166–167
 under Fātimids, 103, 139, 161, 173–176, 182–183, 192, 195
 under Mirdāsids, 183
 under Zangids, 250–251
 under Ayyūbids, 253
 Crusaders in, 11, 18, 244, 331, 350–352, 368
 under Saljūqs, 331
 in Mongol invasions, 398–399
 under Mamlūks, 399–401
 in Nizārī–Musta‘lī schism, 245, 324–325
 home of Druze movement, 188
 in Ḥāfiẓī–Tayyibī schism, 248
 Tayyibīs of, 236, 261
 Ḥāfiẓīs of, 254–255
 Nizārīs of, 11–19 *passim*, 28, 254, 301, 304, 309, 403; literature, 406; preserved Fātimid traditions, 302, 408; Aleppo period (to 507/1113), 331–334; Damascus period (507–523/1113–1129), 347–349; Jabal Bahra‘ period (524–545/1130–1151), 349–352; under Rāshid al-Dīn Sinān (557–589/1162–1193), 367–373; post-*qiyyāma* (589–654/1193–1256), 376, 389–391, 397, 398–399; under Baybars I, 399–402; under Mamlūks, 401–402, 489; under Ottomans, 408, 489; modern period, 488–490, 501
 Muḥammad-Shāhī subgroup, 408, 413–414, 451, 455–456
see also Crusaders; and Nizārīs
 Nuṣayrīs: rivalry with Nizārīs
 Syriac (-Aramaic) language, 184, 223, 233
 al-Ṭabarī, Abū Ja‘far Muḥammad b. Jarīr, historian, 6, 99, 103, 107, 109, 147
 Ṭabaristān (Māzandarān), in northern Persia, 152, 344, 367, 415, 417, 420
 early Ismā‘īlī *da’wa* to, 102, 112
 Nāṣir-i Khusraw in, 206
 Zaydīs in, 313–314
 controlled by Sanjar, 338
 Nizārī *da’wa* to, 314, 342, 346
 against Nizārīs of Rūdbār, 337, 357, 374
 in Mongol invasions, 394
 Timūr in, 418
 Ṣafawid conquest of, 417
 Tabas, in Quhistān, 17, 319, 329
 Tabrīz, in Ādharbayjān, 356, 412, 416, 419, 430, 431
 Tabūk, battle of, 41
 Tāfilālt, in North Africa, 125
tafsīr (*Qur’ān* commentary), 130, 222, 340
 Taft, near Yazd, 429
tahāra (ritual purity), 169
 Tāhart, in western Algeria, 127, 142, 156, 157
 Tāhir b. Radī al-Dīn, Muḥammad-Shāhī Nizārī imam, 451
 Tāhir Sayf al-Dīn, Sayyidnā, Dā’ūdī *dā’ī*, 289–290
 Tāhirids, of southern Yaman, 267, 268
 Tahmāsp I, Ṣafawid shāh, 422, 435–436, 454, 455
 al-Ṭā’ī, ‘Alī b. Aḥmad, *see* al-Muqtanā
 Ṭā’if, in Saudi Arabia, 297

- Tā‘izz, in Yaman, 257
 Tāj al-Dīn, Mihrabānid, 412
 Tāj al-Dīn, pīr, 445–446, 447
 Tāj al-Dīn Abu'l-Futūh b. Muḥammad, Nizārī chief *dā'i* in Syria, 389, 390
 Tāj al-Dīn Āmulī, Zaydi *sayyid*, 416
 Tāj al-Dīn Mardānshāh, *qādī*, governor of Girdkūh, 394
 Tajikistan, 29, 207, 408, 494–495, 502, 503
Tajrīd al-‘aqā’id, of Naṣīr al-Dīn al-Tūsī, 379–380
 Takrīt, in ‘Irāq, 321, 324, 335
 Ṭalā‘ī b. Ruzzik, Fāṭimid vizier, 250–251, 253
 Talha b. ‘Ubayd Allāh, 41, 44
al-tālī (the follower), 134, 190, 229, 230
 Ṭālibids, branch of Hāshimids, 57, 73
 ta‘lim, 339, 500
 in Shī‘ī thought, 40, 82–84
 in teaching of Hasan-i Ṣabbāh, 313, 339–342, 366
 Ta‘limiyya, 24, 342
 Ṭāliqān, in Daylam, 319, 324, 345, 394
 Ṭāliqān, in Khurāsān, 111, 383
 Tamīm b. al-Mu‘izz, poet, son of the Fāṭimid caliph al-Mu‘izz, 172–173
 Tamīm b. al-Mu‘izz, Zīrid, 201, 202
 Tāmir, ‘Ārif, 32
 Ṭamūrṭughān, Saljūq *amīr*, 345
tanāsukh (metempsychosis),
 in doctrine of ‘Abd Allāh b. al-Ḥarb, 62
 in doctrines of the *ghulāt*, 65
 in Druze doctrine, 190
 in Syrian Nizārī doctrine, 372
 rejected by Ṭayyibīs, 273
 in Nuqṭawī doctrine, 422
 Tancred, prince of Antioch, 333–334
 Tando Muḥammad Khān, in Sind, 448
 Tanga, in East Africa, 291, 486
 Tanganyika, in East Africa, 291, 487
 see also Tanzania
 Tangier, 156
 Tantrism, 449
 Tanzania, 291, 484, 497–498, 501
 see also Tanganyika; Zanzibar
tanzil, 130
 Taormina, in Sicily, 145
taqiyya (precautionary dissimulation), 4, 5, 68, 74, 82, 83, 87, 101, 118–119, 129, 137, 167, 170, 277, 279, 280, 283, 376, 379–380, 382, 396, 404, 410, 412, 419, 425, 435, 441, 444, 448, 449–450, 453–454, 492
taqlīd (emulation), 171
 Tarablus, *see* Tripoli, in Syria
Ṭarā‘iq al-ḥaqā‘iq, of Ma‘ṣūm ‘Alī Shāh, Muhammad Ma‘ṣūm Shīrāzī, 477
Ta’rīkh al-rusul wa’l-mulūk, of al-Ṭabarī, 99
Ta’rīkh al-Yaman, of ‘Umāra b. ‘Alī al-Hakamī al-Yamanī, 239–240, 255
Ta’rīkh-i alfī, 436
Ta’rīkh-i Firishta, of Firishta, 452
Ta’rīkh-i guzida, of Ḥamad Allāh Mustawfī, 307
Ta’rīkh-i jahān-gushā, of Juwaynī, 305
Ta’rīkh-i Tabaristān, of Ibn Isfandiyār, 308
tariqa, 420, 423, 426, 427, 428–429, 431, 433, 444, 461–462, 465, 477, 501
 Tarm, *see* Tārum
 Tārmal, minister to Rājpūt king of Gujarāt, 276
 Tartars, *see* Mongolia, Mongols
 Tārum, in Persia, 153, 154, 384, 391, 397, 415
 Tarz, in Khurāsān, 345
taṣawwuf, *see* Sufis
tashbīh (anthropomorphism), 61, 64, 228
 Tashkent, in Uzbekistan, 29
 Tashkorghan, in Sinkiang (Xinjiang) region of China, 494
ta‘ṭīl, 228
tawḥīd, 188, 189, 228, 233, 270
ta’wil (esoteric interpretation),
 in doctrine of al-Mughīra, 70
 in Shī‘ī thought, 83–84
 in doctrine of early Khaṭṭābīs, 86
 in early Ismā‘īlī doctrine, 129–130
 in Druze religion, 188–189
 in Fāṭimid doctrine, 166, 169, 208, 213, 221, 228, 232
 in Nizārī doctrine of *qiyāma*, 358, 360, 364, 366, 411
 in Sufi doctrine, 419
 for Ḥurūfiyya, 421

- Ta'wīl al-da'ā'im*, of al-Qādī al-Nu'mān, 215
- Ta'wīl al-zakāt*, of Ja'far b. Manṣūr al-Yaman, 165
- Tawwābūn (the Penitents), 51, 52
- taxation, 108, 141, 185, 317, 330, 400
see also *jizya*; *kharāj*
- Tayir-Buqa, Mongol general, 396
- Tayy tribesmen, 192
- al-Tayyib, son of the Fātimid caliph al-Āmir, Musta'lī-Tayyibī imam, 105, 238–239, 246, 247, 256, 261–262, 264, 274, 275
- Ṭayyib Diyā'al-Dīn b. Nūr al-Dīn Yūsuf, 'Alawī Bohra *dā'i*, 282
- Ṭayyib Zayn al-Dīn, Dā'ūdī *dā'i*, 287
- Tayyibhai Razzak, Malik Shahanshah, leader of Artāliswālās, 289
- Ṭayyibī Bohras, see India: Ṭayyibīs of
- Ṭayyibīs, Ṭayyibiyya, branch of Musta'lians, 1, 3, 94, 201, 246, 287, 385
historiography, 239–241, 261
preserved Fātimid literature, 172, 207, 236, 265
doctrine, 269–275
system of law, 169
epistle announcing birth of al-Tayyib, 246, 261
tradition concerning fate of al-Tayyib, 261–262
tradition concerning early *dā'is*, 263–264
da'wa organization, 219, 275–276
schism with Ḥāfiẓiyya, 246–248, 259, 260, 264, 277, 325
- Dā'ūdī-Sulaymānī-'Alawī schism, 239, 280–282, 295–296, 299–300
- Ja'farī secession, 278–279
of named areas see under Egypt; India; Syria; Yaman
see also Musta'lians; Dā'ūdīs; Sulaymānīs; 'Alawīs ('Alawiyya)
- ta'ziya* (popular religious play), 50
- Tāzrūt, in North Africa, 126
- Tegüder, Mongol general, 394
- Tehran, 31, 111, 427, 460, 463, 464, 465, 466, 469, 470, 472, 473, 493, 494
- Templars, see Knights Templar
- temporary marriage, see *mut'a*
- Terken Khātūn, Malikshāh's wife, 319, 320
- ṭhākur* (*ṭhākkar*), 443
- Thanapipli, near Jūnāgarh, 448
- al-thānī* (the second), 229
- Thatta, in Sind, 167, 443
- Theology, of Aristotle, see *Uthūlūjīyā*
- Thietmar, M., German traveller, 14
- Thimāl b. Mirdās, 195, 204
- Third World, 497, 503
'three schoolfellows', legend of, 312
- Tiflis, 356
- Tigris river, 321
- Tihāma, in Yaman, 198, 199
- Tīmjān, in Daylam, 416
- Tīmūr (Tēmür), founder of the Tīmūrid dynasty, 308, 415, 416, 418, 421, 422, 425, 426, 428, 451, 452
- Tīmūrids, of Persia and Transoxania, 308, 415, 425, 427, 429, 431, 452
- Tinnīs, in Egypt, 244
- tolerance, racial and religious, 137, 176, 177, 212, 236
- Toluy, son of Chingiz Khan, 383
- Toronto, 497, 504
- Tortosa (Ṭartūs), 389
- trade, 138, 176, 181, 201, 285, 290, 291
- Transcaucasia, 154, 356
- transmigration of souls, see *tanāsukh*
- Transoxania (Mā warā' al-nahr), 29, 54, 218, 224, 334, 415
later Kaysānī sects of, 63
and *Umm al-kitāb*, 95
- Ismā'ilī *da'wa* to, 99, 111, 116, 122, 203
al-Nasafī's mission to, 113
following of Aḥmad b. al-Kayyāl, 112–113
- Fātimid *da'wa* to, 202, 209, 325
followed dissident Ismā'ilīs, 154, 121–122
origin of Saljūqs, 195
conquered by Mongols, 382
- Ni'mat Allāh Wali in, 428
- Nizārīs of, 407, 451–452, 455, 456, 494–495, 502; literature and historiography, 406, 407–408, 494–495
see also Badakhshan; Central Asia

- Tripoli, in North Africa, 125, 162, 169, 183
 Tripoli (Tarablus), in Syria, 22, 179, 244,
 331, 350, 352, 369, 402
 Tübingen University Library, 32
 Tubna, in North Africa, 127, 147
 Tughluqid dynasty, of India, 277
 Tughril I, Saljūq sultan, 195–197, 205
 Tughril II, Saljūq sultan, 338, 346
 Tughril III, Saljūq sultan, 373
 Tughtigīn, founder of the Būrid (Bōrid)
 dynasty of Damascus and southern
 Syria, 334, 347–348
Tuhfat al-qulūb, of Hātim b. Ibrāhīm
 al-Hāmidī, 275
 Tukhāristān, 320
 Tükel Bahadur, Mongol officer, 393
 Tūlūnids, of Egypt and Syria, 125
 Tūn, in Quhistān, 17, 319, 353, 391,
 392–393, 412
 Tunis, 146, 183
 Tunisia, 127
 see also Ifrīqiya
 Tūrānshāh, Ayyūbid ruler of Yaman, 257,
 260
 Turaythīt, in Quhistān, 345, 357
 Turbat-i Haydariya, in Khurāsān, 494
 Turkey, 421
 Turkistān, 29, 374, 438
 Turkomans, 196, 197, 210, 331, 425, 430
 Turks, 175, 178, 187, 193, 218, 316, 331,
 332, 352, 373
 see also Ottoman Turks; Saljūqs;
 Turkomans
 Turshīz, in Khurāsān, 329, 391
 Tūs, in Khurāsān, 378, 393
 al-Tūsī, Abū Ja‘far Muḥammad b.
 al-Ḥasan, Shaykh al-Tā’ifa, Imāmī
 scholar, 68, 168, 170
 al-Tūsī, Khwāja Naṣīr al-Dīn Muḥammad
 b. Muḥammad, Shī‘ī scholar, 304,
 340, 378–382, 393, 395, 398, 440
 Tutar, Mongol officer, 394
 Tutush, Saljūq ruler of Syria, 197, 320,
 325, 331
 Twelvers, Twelver Shī‘ism
 (Ithnā‘ashariyya), 1, 35, 58, 63, 81,
 89, 117, 206, 311, 495
 as majority branch of the Shī‘a, 58–59,
 89
 definition of *ahl al-bayt*, 57–58, 82–83
 use of the term *hujja*, 117–118
 Mahdī concept, 60
 and *taqiyā*, 68, 82, 129, 404
 and the *ghulāt*, 63, 67
 supported imamate of Mūsā al-Kāzīm,
 89
 hostile to Ismā‘il b. Ja‘far, 89, 91
 hostile to Muḥammad b. Ismā‘il, 96
 practices developed under Büyids, 178
 system of law, 80, 170–171, 172
 persecuted under ‘Abbāsids, 78–79
 proclaimed as state religion in Fāṭimid
 Egypt, 247, 262
 on Naṣīr al-Dīn al-Tūsī, 379
 proclaimed as state religion in Ṣafawid
 Persia, 405, 431, 435
 proclaimed as state religion in
 Nizām-Shāhī Deccan, 454
 and Sufism, 420, 429–430
 guise for Qāsim-Shāhī Nizārīs, 437,
 451, 490, 504; campaigns against
 Nizārīs, 463, 490–491, 492–493;
 guise for Muḥammad-Shāhī Nizārīs,
 454–455; relations with
 contemporary Nizārīs of Persia, 494;
 rituals observed by Persian Nizārīs,
 492, 493
 of Anjudān, 423
 of Khojas, 474, 481, 484, 486, 488
 hostile to Ni‘mat Allāhīs, 461–462
 of East Africa, 486
 Imām-Shāhīs as, 446–447
 Mōmnas as, 448
 hostile to Shāh Khalīl Allāh (III), 463
 Murād Mīrzā‘īs embraced, 491
 al-Qādī al-Nu‘mān depicted as, 168
 Naṣīr al-Dīn al-Tūsī as, 379–380
 see also imamate; Imāmīs; Shī‘īs
 Tyabji family, of Bombay, 300
 Tyre (Ṣūr), 179, 197, 216, 243, 244, 313,
 372, 402
 ‘Ubayd Allāh b. Ziyād, Umayyad
 governor of Baṣra and Kūfa, 50, 51
 ‘Ubayd Allāh al-Mahdī, *see* al-Mahdī,
 ‘Abd Allāh, first Fāṭimid caliph
 Uchchh, in Sind, 442–443, 444, 450
 Udaipur, in India, 291

- Uganda, 291, 484, 487, 497, 501
 Ujjain, in India, 285–286, 291
 ‘Ulā’iyya, 94–95
 ‘ulamā’ (religious scholars), 7, 34, 35, 201, 203, 206, 281, 287, 288, 312, 321, 336, 341, 435, 461, 466
 ‘Ulaym, Banū, of Syria, 335
 ‘Ulays, Banu'l-, of Syria, 122
 ‘Ullayqa, castle, in Syria, 368, 400, 401, 402
 ūlu'l-‘azm, 97, 131, 226
 ‘Umān, 110, 199, 291, 486
 ‘Umar II, Umayyad caliph, 71
 ‘Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb, second caliph, 36, 37, 41, 42, 43, 55, 66, 74
 ‘Umar b. Sa‘d, 53
 ‘Umar b. Yaḥyā, 151
 ‘Umar Khayyām, poet and astronomer, 312
 ‘Umāra b. ‘Ali al-Ḥakamī, Yamanī historian and poet, 239–240, 253–254, 255, 261, 263
 Umayyads, Banū Umayya, 37, 44, 45, 48, 49, 52, 56, 58, 62, 66, 114, 223
 control over ‘Irāq, 51, 53–54
 challenged ‘Ali b. Abī Ṭālib, 44–46
 cursed by radical Shī‘is, 66
 collapse, 71, 72, 74
 overthrown by ‘Abbāsids, 62, 78
 Umayyads, of Spain, 140, 141, 156, 182
Umm al-kitāb, anonymous Shī‘i work, 29, 93–94, 95, 98, 407
umma (community of believers), 1, 34, 36, 39
 United Arab Emirates, 501
 United Kingdom,
 in East Africa, 291
 invasion of Afghanistan, 468, 469–470
 and Āghā Khān I, 469–472, 473–474
 and Āghā Khān II, 477
 and Aga Khan III, 481–483, 493
 Nizārī community of, 501
 see also England; India; Britain
 United Nations, 496
 United States of America, 497, 501
 University of Central Asia, in
 Tajikistan, 503
 upper Oxus region, *see* Transoxania
 ‘Uqayl, Banū, 176
 ‘Uqaylids, of ‘Irāq and northern Syria, 176, 183, 185, 196
 al-Uq̄huwāna, in Palestine, 192
 al-Urbus (Laribus), in North Africa, 127
 Urdu (language), 30, 297, 299
 Īrkhān, Khwārazmian commander, 386
 ‘Uṣfūn, village, in upper Egypt, 255
 ‘Uslūj b. al-Hasan, Fātimid administrator, 212
 Ustūnāwand, fortress, in Damāwand, 321
uṣūl al-fiqh, 171
 see also *fiqh*
al-Uṣūl min al-Kāfi, of al-Kulaynī, 118
 Uṣūlī school, of Twelver law, 171
 Usyūt (Asyūt), in upper Egypt, 250
 ‘Uthmān b. ‘Affān, third caliph, 37, 41, 42–44, 45, 46, 48, 66, 74
 ‘Uthmāniyya, 45, 46
Uthūlūjiyā (*Theology*), of Aristotle, Pseudo-Aristotelian treatise, 224
 Uwāl, island, in Persian Gulf, 210
 Uways I, Jalāyirid ruler of
 Ādharbāyjān, 416
‘Uyūn al-akhbār wa-funūn al-āthār, of
 Idrīs ‘Imād al-Dīn, 5, 90, 99, 240
 on ‘hidden imams’, 106
 on al-Ṭayyib, 262
 ‘Uyūnids, of eastern Arabia, 210
 Uzbekistan, 113
 Vaishnavism, 450
 Valentinian Gnosticism, 69, 93
 Vancouver, in Canada, 497
 Vasak, brother of the Fātimid vizier
 Bahrām, 249
 Vatican Library, Vatican, 21
 Vazīrī Kirmānī, Aḥmad ‘Alī Khān, historian, 408, 459
 Veda, 450
 vegetarianism, 124, 204, 282
 Venice, in Italy, 15, 18
Vetus de Montanis, *see* Old Man of the Mountain
 Victoria, queen of Great Britain and empress of India, 481
Vieux de la Montagne, le, *see* Old Man of the Mountain
 Villani, Giovanni, historian, 19
 Vishnu, Hindu deity, 450

- vizier, vizierate, *see wazīr*
 Vohra, Hindu caste, 276
- Wādī al-Taym, in Syria, 348, 352
waezeen, Nizārī preachers, 499
wahda, *see ahl-i wahdat*
 Wahhābiyya, 86, 296
 Wahsūdān b. Muḥammad,
 Musāfrid, 121, 153, 154
 Wahsūdān b. Murzubān, Justānid, 153
wahy (divine revelation), 83
Wajh-i dīn, of Nāṣir-i Khusraw, 30,
 208–209
wājib al-wujūd, ‘the necessary
 existent’, 233, 234
 Wakhān, in Badakhshan, 29, 95
wakīl, 447
walā’ (clientage), 54
 see also mawālī
al-walad al-tāmm (the perfect child), 273
walāya (Persian *walāyat*), 83–84, 169, 170
walī, *awliyā’*, 84, 134, 215, 428
wālī, head of Ṭayyibī *da’wa* in India, 276,
 277, 278
 Walī al-Dawla Abū'l-Barakāt b. 'Abd
 al-Haqīq, chief *dā'i*, 245
wālī mullā, rank in Dā'ūdī *da’wa*, 293
 al-Walīd I, Umayyad caliph, 54, 61
 al-Walīd II, Umayyad caliph, 74, 75
 al-Walīd b. 'Utbā b. Abī Sufyān,
 Umayyad, 267
 Walīd, Banū'l-, of Yaman, 240, 267, 269
 Walker, Paul E., 32, 231
 Walter of Mesnil, Templar knight, 369
wāqifīyya, 96
Waṣāyā, attributed to Nizām al-Mulk, 312
waṣī, *awṣīyā’* (legatees), 40, 81, 83, 85,
 129, 130, 132, 217, 232, 234, 365
 Wāṣil b. 'Atā', founder of the
 Mu'tazila, 73
 Wāṣit, in 'Irāq, 54, 149, 196, 367
wāṣīta, 179, 180, 181, 191, 212
 Watt, William Montgomery, 47
wazīr (vizier), 52, 77, 158, 172, 176, 179,
 180, 181, 211–212, 248, 252, 312
wazīr al-sayf (*wa'l-qalam*), 194, 212, 248
wazīr al-tafwīd, 212
wazīr al-tanfidh, 212
- Wellhausen, Julius, orientalist, 34, 74
 West: Ismā‘īlīs migrated to, 290, 291, 497,
 500, 504
 West Africa, 189
 Western Ismā‘īlīs, *see Musta‘lians*
wilāya, 428
 Wilhelm II, Kaiser, emperor of
 Germany, 481
 William of Châteauneuf, Grand Master of
 the Knights Hospitaller, 390
 William of Rubruck (Rubruquis),
 Franciscan friar and envoy of Louis
 IX to Mongolia, 15, 17, 389
 William of Tyre, archbishop and Crusader
 historian, 13, 310, 350, 369
 Windsor Castle, 481
 women, emancipation of, 290, 300,
 487–488
 World War I, 482, 483, 486, 491
 World War II, 483, 491
Wuṣafā' (the Servants), 70
 see also Mughīriyya
- Ya‘burīs, branch of Banū Hamdān, 266,
 268
yad, rank in *da’wa* hierarchy, 218
 al-Yāfi‘ī, 'Abd Allāh, Sufi master, 428
 Yāfi‘iyya, Sufi order, 428
 Ya‘furid (or Ya‘firid) dynasty, of
 Yaman, 122, 198
 Yaḥyā, son of Zikrawayh b.
 Mihrawayh, 122–123
 Yaḥyā IV, Idrīsid, 142
 Yaḥyā b. 'Abbās, 210
 Yaḥyā b. Abī'l-Shumayt, 88
 Yaḥyā b. 'Alī b. Ḥamdün, 157, 158
 Yaḥyā b. al-'Azīz, Ḥammādīd, 202
 Yaḥyā b. Lamak al-Ḥammādī, *dā'i* in
 Yaman, 243, 263–264
 Yaḥyā b. Zayd b. 'Alī, Zaydī imam, 73, 77
 Ya‘lā b. Muḥammad, Īfranid, 156
 Yalaoui (al-Ya‘lāwī), Mohammed
 (Muhammad), 32
 Yām, Banū, of Yaman, 255, 258, 295–296,
 297, 298
 Yamāma, 99, 110, 206
 Yaman, 3, 5, 20, 28, 30, 400
 Ismā‘īlī *da’wa* to, 102, 109–110, 327

Index

771

- Qarmaṭīs of, 99, 122
 in Ismā‘īlī schism of 286/899, 122
 under Fātimids, 176, 218; Fātimid
da‘wa to, 198–201, 204, 220,
 256–257, 263–264; *da‘wa* to India,
 200–201
 Ḥāfiẓiyā supported in, 238, 248,
 255–260
 Ḥāfiẓī–Ṭayyibī schism, 258–259,
 263–264
 in Nizārī–Musta‘lī schism, 262–263,
 324–325
 Zuray‘ids of, 255–257
 Ṭayyibīs of, 94, 256, 262–269 *passim*,
 276–277, 281
 Dā‘ūdīs of, 281–282, 291
 Sulaymānīs of, 281–282, 295–300;
jazīra of, 298
 revolt of Firuz, 125
 Ayyūbid conquest of, 253
 Ottoman occupation of, 280, 296
 war with Sa‘ūdīs, 297
see also Sulayhids, of Yaman
- Yamanīs,
 Shī‘ī tendencies, 41, 43, 45, 47–48, 51,
 77
 traditions of kingship and hereditary
 attributes, 41, 47, 55–56
- Yamīn al-Dīn Bahrāmshāh, Naṣrid *amīr*
 of Sīstān, 383–384
- Yānis, Fātimid vizier, 246, 247, 248
- Yāniṣiyā, 248
- Ya‘qūb, son of Bhārmal, *dā‘ī* in
 Gujarāt, 276
- Yaranqush, Saljūq *amīr*, 353
- Yarde-Buller, Joan, mother of Aga Khan
 IV, 483
- Yarīm, in Yaman, 298
- Yarkand, in Sinkiang (Xinjiang) province
 of China, 494, 496
- Yārūkh, Fātimid governor of
 Damascus, 182
- Yasa‘ur Noyan, Mongol commander, 392,
 393
- Yāsir b. Bilāl, Zuray‘id vizier, 257
- Yazd, in Persia, 313, 427, 429, 459, 463,
 468, 494
- Yazdī, Sharaf al-Dīn ‘Alī, historian, 418
- Yazid I, Umayyad caliph, 49–50, 51, 52
- Yazid II, Umayyad caliph, 71
- Yazid III, Umayyad caliph, 74–75
- al-Yāzurī, al-Ḥasan b. ‘Alī, Fātimid vizier,
 172, 193–194, 197, 201, 203–204
- Yināltigīn, *see* Bināltigīn
- Yule, Sir Henry, 16–17
- Yumgān, in Badakhshan, 206–207
- Yūrun Tāsh, Saljūq *amīr*, 318
- Yūsha‘ (Joshua), 132
- Yūsuf, father of the Fātimid caliph
 al-‘Ādīd, 251
- Yūsuf ‘Ādil Khān, ‘Ādil-Shāhī ruler,
 , 453
- Yūsuf b. Abi'l-Sāj, Sājid *amīr* of
 Ādharbāyjān, 149, 153
- Yūsuf b. Firūz, 348
- Yūsuf b. Sulaymān, Ṭayyibī *dā‘ī*
muṭlaq, 269, 279–280
- Yūsuf b. ‘Umar al-Thaqafī, Umayyad
 governor of ‘Irāq, 72
- Yūsuf Najm al-Dīn, Dā‘ūdī *dā‘ī*, 286
- Yves le Breton, friar and envoy to Syrian
 Nizarīs, 14–15, 391
- Zāb, battle of, 78
- Zāb, in North Africa, 147, 157
- Zabīd, in Tihāma, 198, 199, 256, 259–260,
 268
- Zābūd mountains, in Syria, 261
- al-Zabūr, of the founder of the Sabaean
 religion, 227
- Zād al-musāfirin, of Nāṣir-i Khusraw, 206
- Zafar, fortress, in Badakhshan, 452
- Zafar Khān Muẓaffar, sultan of
 Gujarāt, 277
- al-Zāfarānī, Sunnī jurist, 111
- al-Ζāfir, Fātimid caliph, 249–250, 251
- Zagros mountains, in western Persia, 321,
 339, 353, 384
- Zāhid ‘Alī, 30
- Ζāhir, 10, 83, 129–131, 167, 221–222, 226,
 269, 361, 362, 366, 381, 412, 420,
 441
- al-Ζāhir, Ayyūbid ruler of Aleppo, 389
- al-Ζāhir, Fātimid caliph, 191–192, 198,
 200
- Ζāhir al-Dīn Nīshāpūrī, historian, 308

- Zahr al-*ma‘ānī*, of Idrīs ‘Imād al-Dīn, 106, 269
- Zahra, fortress, in Ḥarāz, 266
- Zahra, Princess, daughter of Aga Khan IV, 504
- Zakarī or Zakariyyā, the ‘Persian Mahdī’ of the Qarmaṭīs, 150
- zakāt* (alms), 169, 294
- Zakī al-Dīn Ṭayyib b. Shaykh Ādam, ‘Alawī Bohra *dā‘ī*, 282
- Zanāta, Berbers, 141, 142, 145–146, 156, 157, 182
- Zand dynasty, of Persia, 405, 408, 459–461
- Zangi b. Āq Sunqur, founder of the Zangid dynasty, 352
- Zangids, of Syria and northern ‘Irāq, 250–251, 350, 368, 369, 370, 372, 373
- Zanj, 108, 109, 114, 115, 218
- Zanjān, in Persia, 377
- al-Zanjānī, *see* ‘Ali b. Hārūn al-Zanjānī
- Zanzibar, 291–292, 293, 485–487, 497
see also Tanzania
- Zarand, in Kirmān, 460
- Zarang, in Sīstān, 384
- Zardusht, *see* Zoroaster
- Zarubin, Ivan I., 29, 30
- Zāwa, in Khurāsān, 393
- al-Zawāḥī, Sulaymān b. ‘Abd Allāh, Ismā‘īlī *dā‘ī* in Yaman, 198, 199
- zāwiya*, 429
see also *khānaqāh*
- Zawzan, *see* Zūzan
- Zayd b. ‘Alī b. al-Ḥusayn, Zaydī imam, 68, 72–73, 75, 76
- Zayd b. Rifā‘a, 235
- Zaydābād, fortress, in Sirjān, 469
- Zaydis, Zaydiyya, 35, 69, 73–74, 75, 153, 199, 257, 344, 353
sources, on pre-Fātimid Ismā‘īlī cosmology, 133–134, 230
term *dā‘ī* used by, 219
transmitters of *ḥadīth* for al-Qāḍī al-Nu‘mān, 170
against Ismā‘īlis, 110
system of law, 171
forced Ismā‘īlis to retreat in Yaman, 109–110
- against Nizārīs, 10, 24
- against Ṣulayḥids, 198–199
- against Hamdānids, 259
- escaped Ayyūbid control, 260
- against Ṭayyibīs, 239, 240, 264, 267, 268, 280
- against Sulaymānīs, 296, 297
- at war with Sa‘ūdīs, 296
- in Caspian region, 112, 114, 178, 314, 317, 344, 346, 415, 416
- at Alamūt, 314, 415–416
- Zayn al-‘Ābidīn, imam, *see* ‘Alī b. al-Ḥusayn
- Zervān, angel, 270
- Zikrawayh b. Mihrawayh, Qarmaṭī *dā‘ī*, 99, 108, 117, 122–124, 125
- Zīrī b. Manād, *amīr* of Ṣāḥīja and Fāṭimid general, 146, 147, 156, 157
- Zīrids, of Ifriqiya, 157, 162, 176, 179–180, 183, 201
- Ziyād b. Abīhi, Umayyad governor of Baṣra and Kūfa, 49
- Ziyādat Allāh III, Aghlabid, 127
- Ziyādids, of Yaman, 198
- Ziyārid dynasty, of Ṭabaristān and Gurgān, in northern Persia, 112, 152
- Zoroaster, 150, 227
- Zoroastrians, Zoroastrianism, 56, 60, 133, 136, 150, 227, 270
- al-Zubayr b. al-‘Awwām, 41, 44
- Zubayr Rāghī, ruler in Badakhshan, 452
- Zubayrid anti-caliphate, 53, 58
- Zubdat al-asrār, of Ṣafī ‘Alī Shāh, 479
- Zubdat al-ḥaqā’iq, of ‘Azīz al-Dīn Nasafī, 420
- Zubdat al-nuṣra, of al-Bundārī, 308
- Zubdat al-tawārikh, of Kāshānī, 307
- Zuhayr b. al-Qayn, 50
- zuhūr* (manifestation), 65, 89, 238–239
see also *dawr al-kashf*
- Zurāra b. A‘yan, Imāmī scholar, 68, 84
- Zuray‘, Banū, of ‘Adan, 255
- Zuray‘ b. al-‘Abbās, Zuray‘id, 255–256
- Zuray‘ids, Zuray‘iyya, of ‘Adan, 199, 200, 238, 255–257, 258, 260, 265
- Zūzan, in Quhistān, 319, 374